THE ANCIENT WORLD
BY THE SAME AUTHOR

India in Kalidasa
Women in Rigveda
Feeders of Indian Cultures
Outline History of the Literatures of the World.
History of Ancient India
Cultural History of the Imperial Guptas
History of Indian Art
THE ANCIENT WORLD

60165

BHAGWAT SARAN UPADHYAYA

901.093

S. CHAND & CO (Pvt) LTD
RAM NAGAR, NEW DELHI-110055
S. CHAND & CO (Pvt) LTD

Head Office: RAM NAGAR, NEW DELHI-110055
Show Room: 4/16-B, Asaf Ali Road, New Delhi-110001

Branches:
Mai Hiran Gate, Jullundur-144001
Aminabad Park, Lucknow-226001
Blackie House,
103/5 Walchand Hirachand Marg,
Opp. G.P.O. Bombay-400001
35, Mount Road, Madras-600002
285/J, Bipin Behari Ganguly Street
Calcutta-700012
Sultan Bazar, Hyderbad-500001
Khazanchi Road, Patna-800004
Mundhada Bhawan, Gandhi Sagar East
Nagpur-440002

CENTRAL ARCHIVE
LIBRARY, NEW DELHI

Acc. No. 60.165
Date 18.6.76

First Edition 1954
Second Revised and Enlarged Edition 1976

Published by S. Chand & Co (Pvt) Ltd, Ram Nagar, New Delhi-110055
and printed at Rajendra Ravindra Printers (Pvt) Ltd, Ram Nagar,
New Delhi-110055
PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION

This little volume has no pretensions to research. It purports to give a very brief account of the ancient civilizations of Asia. Egypt, Sumeria, Elam, Babylonia, Assyria, Persia Palestine, Syria, Crete, India, and China alone have, for the present, been treated. It is hoped that subsequent volumes will take up the rest of the countries of Asia.

The author cannot help feeling unhappy about the apathy of Asian scholars towards the study, chiefly, of the ancient Near and Middle East cultures. It is a great pity that while the West has done a lot in the direction, practically nothing has been done in Asia to foster study in that field. It is hoped that this little piece of history, written perhaps for the first time by an Asian national, will find favour with the readers of this continent.

This book has quite a few limitations. Indeed, none so drastic as the treatment of India and China. Both of these countries have had a history that has been continuous and has come down to the present day but, since an artificial contemporaneity had to be maintained, their accounts have had to be arbitrarily closed. The continuity of Indian culture is unbroken to the present day. All the same, there sets in a hiatus after the close of the Indus Valley civilization and it has been not so very unnatural to end the Indian account there. Since the Aryans ended the Indus Valley civilization and were contemporaneous with it, the Rigvedic Aryans have found a mention. But the treatment of China has had to be extremely restricted since its history is of one piece down to the contemporary times.
I am grateful to my young friend Subhas Chandra Chaturvedi, M.A., for assisting me in reading the proofs and doing the Index.

The Author

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION

I feel great pleasure while presenting to my readers this Second revised and enlarged Edition of The Ancient World. In course of the last few years quite a lot of new material has come to light which had to be incorporated. Then my own visits to the ancient sites in West Asia acquainted me with new data which too had to be added. This incidentally explains the delay in bringing out this edition. Now the old volume has been thoroughly revised in the light of the new finds and much new matter has been added to bring it to date.

I am deeply indebted to the National Library of India, Calcutta, where I received all the attention and consideration needed for registering immense material for a new edition. It has added to the volume and utility of the work. I must also thank my publishers who, despite the call on their reserve and the printing odds, managed to put it into print.

The Author
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. Egypt</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. Mesopotamia</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. Palestine</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. Babylonia, Elam and Persia</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. Aegean Civilization</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI. Indus Valley Civilization</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII. China</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII. Retrospect</td>
<td>278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bibliography</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 1

Egypt

1. HISTORY

The Land and its People

Cast amidst burning sands there lies a piece of living glory. This is Egypt, one of the earliest cradles of human civilization. This straggling fruitful valley is but an oasis of gigantic dimensions. On the west lie the endless sand-dunes of the Libyan desert, on the east rises a rocky highland of solid quartz, the crystalline masses of the Arabian hills, lining the naked, reddish, glimmering plateau beyond. Pressed between the two the valley of the Lower Nile, a bare breadth of fifteen to thirty miles, has moulded the destiny of man for ages. The Greeks called the valley Egypt, the Hebrews Mizrain and the neighbourly Semite population Mesr.

The narrowest country in the world, not larger than the little kingdom of Belgium, Egypt has on her breast emblazoned glory of millenniums. Through a vast expanse of sand the life-giving Nile winds her way to a land-locked sea flooding the narrow dale in midsummer when the Ethiopian snow melts and seeks an outlet. The great river, one of the most famous of all the rivers of the world, flows into the sea, its tributary streams glistening under the
hot and glaring sun, their borders fringed with slender palms and masses of grassy emerald. Egypt, both ancient and modern, owes everything to this river and to its scanty waters, harassed on either side with hostile, shifting sand. The river was called Ha-pi by the ancients and the land, through which it coursed, Kamit, 'the Black Country'.

Before man was able to harness nature to his advantage, he lay at the mercy of the herds of hippopotami and the crowds of crocodiles in the swamps and of the horned cerastes and the deathdealing cobra. But soon that savage, who could stand erect and could combine with the advantage of a mind the shaping services of a thumb, got the better of his deadly enemies and addressed himself to the noble task of humanizing the world.

His march through the stages of civilization is marked by the implements he has left behind ever since the palaeolithic age. He fought and hunted, made fire and cooked and soon rode the whirlpool to direct the storm. Effort and toil changed the face of his world. He began to sow and irrigate, grow and harvest his corn, the gift of the river in spate, indeed, his well deserved annuity. Mud and reed afforded him dwelling, pottery and paper signalizing his passing out of barbarism into civilization.

The Nile has ebbs and flows and its annual flows, the great inundations, beginning at the summer solstice and running over a hundred days, turn the arid waste of the yellow sand into green fields and endless patches of plants of wheat and cotton that have fed and clad the dwellers of that magic land through millenniums. Maspero writes that for thousands of years the farmers of Egypt have watched this rise of the river with bated breath and anxious eagerness so that when the water receded after enriching the soil with its silt they may put the seed in the alluvial plain and make it blossom into crops. To this day public criers announce the rise of the river every morning in the streets of Cairo.
The past has thus moved into the future touching the present on the way. Time passes on, does not ever halt; we divide it into the past, present and future for the convenience of our comprehension. Only we, the chronicler's of passing events, make divisions, time never does.

The dwellers along the banks of the Nile knew by fateful experience that the river and its branches are as much life-givers as life-takers and unless they shielded themselves against the inclement flow it would trounce and ruin them with the least scruple. So they provided their plots with ditches that crossed and recrossed the land and caught the surplus of water in canals, and when the river receded and its tides fell they irrigated their holdings by hauling water in buckets pivoted on long poles. As the day follows the night, the light of dawn the dusk of the evening twilight, so did the early man in Egypt alternate his light and shade and greet his crops and lament their failure. But they never abandoned their hopes, their efforts never despaired their misfortunes. They harnessed the river, they captained their fate.

Herodotus wrote about the Egyptian farmers in 450 B.C. thus:

"They gather in the fruits of the earth with less labour than any other people, for they have not the toil of breaking up the furrow with the plough, nor of hoeing, nor of any other work which all other men must labour at to obtain a crop of corn."

Maspero's quotation from a contemporary scribe, however, refers to a gloomy state in which the Egyptian farmer was cast. "Does thou not recall," writes the scribe, "the picture of the farmer when the tenth of his grain is levied? Worms have destroyed half the wheat, and the hippopotami have eaten the rest; there are swarms of rats in the fields, the grasshoppers alight there, the cattle devour, the little birds pilfer; and if the farmer loses sight for an instant of
what remains on the ground, it is carried off by robbers; moreover, the thongs which bind the iron and the hoe are worn out, and the team has died at the plough. It is then that the scribe steps out of the boat at the landing place to levy the tithe and there come the Keepers of the Doors of the (King's) Granary with cudgels, and Negroes with ribs of palm-leaves, crying, 'Come now, come!' There is none, and they throw the cultivator full length up on the ground, bind him, drag him to the canal, and fling him in head first; his wife is bound with him, his children are put into chains. The neighbours in the meantime leave him and fly to save their grain."

Egypt got her minerals from Nubia and Arabia. Copper was mined but not much. Nubia supplied gold and the Hittites iron. The Egyptians learnt early to blend copper and tin and turn the alloy into bronze of which weapons and numerous other objects were made. Artisans glazed pottery, blew glass and coloured them, carpenters carved wood and made boats, carriages, chairs, tables and beds and coffins, and the cobblers cobbled with curved knives, tanned the skins to fashion quivers, shields and wearing apparels. The arts of enamelling and varnishing were known and ropes, mats, sandals and paper were manufactured from reeds and plants. The subtlest weave in the history of textile was every weaver’s achievement. It was 'a weave so fine that it requires a magnifying glass to distinguish it from silk.' Pyramids and temples, and irrigational reservoirs and canals, one connecting the Nile with the Red Sea, were some of the feats of engineering of ancient Egypt which could boast of numerous industries.

Once light had dawned on the restive genius of man, the progress was rapid. Civilization grew by leaps and bounds and mighty men covered the marches of the arid waste and intrepid mariners braved the dangers of the deep. Mysteries of nature opened their secret to them when they
discovered the balm to secure the dead skin against the temper of inclement weather. The skies gaped with wonder when little men, getting into the secret of team work, lifted tons' weight of rocks over naked sinews and, raising tier upon tier, drove the wedge of pyramids into their bosom ensuring the safety of human corpse under the vaulted domes against the decaying frown of the Heavens themselves.

But who were these makers of the mummies and builders of the pyramids? That is not easy to answer. But who indeed were they? Numerous origins, from Indian to African, have been suggested. Some regard the ancient Egyptians as descended from the Ethiopians and the Nubians, others give them a common ancestry with the Phoenicians, yet others suppose them to have come to the land of the Nile from the east, from the land of Punt across the Red Sea. At least a foreign, north-eastern, element is discernible in both their religion and language. The sun-worship without doubt was an essentially Semitic cult and was absolutely foreign to the beliefs of the Neolithic Egyptians. So also do their early language, mainly their verbs, seem to have imbibed Semitic influences, apart from the belief of the philologists that the ancient Egyptian was a Semitic language. But certainly influences on religion and language can hardly determine the composition of a race, as both can be acquired.

The mixing of ethnic units is as much an established truth in Egypt as anywhere else. Nevertheless the local forms the basic unit. The digging of De Morgan has uncovered a series of tools of stone—flint hand-axes, harpoons, hammers—which clearly indicate the stages through which the palaeolithic man changed into the neolithic and the Old Stone Age merged into the New Stone Age when copper pins, vases and chisel, and gradually ornaments of gold and silver came to be used by man who no longer used
only what he chanced at but forged what he needed. The excavations have brought to light all the stages of the development of a savage civilization where the palaeolithic had graduated into the neolithic and the use of the metal along with the fine-grained and finely finished stone implements had already introduced the age of agriculture. Bodies exhumed at the village of Badari, midway between Cairo and Karnak, have disclosed undigested husks of barley, a clear evidence of the cultivation of cereals for they are not known to have grown wildly in Egypt.

But certainly those alone who passed from the palaeolithic to the neolithic civilization, were not the men who built the pyramids. Ethnic welding, which often serves as a great prelude to a vigorous new civilization, had already preceded the building of those wonders. The Egyptians were far from being a pure race.

Purity of race, in fact, as purity of culture, is a myth. It may be that the ancient Egyptians also like other peoples mingled their blood with neighbours and invaders. The separate existence of the lands of the Upper and the Lower Nile and their consequent welding into a single nation lends colour to this supposition. It is possible that the Semites entered the tube of Egypt from the top north and the Hemitest from the bottom south. But these southerners were by no means negroes, not even negroid. They came probably from the north-eastern Africa and southern Arabia by way of the Upper Nile and Nubia, the usual way by which Egyptian caravans journeyed to Punt throughout the period of the Old Kingdom.

Legendary traditions credit Shemsu-Hor, 'followers of Horus', to have marched from the Upper Nile and conquered the Anu, the followers of Set, in the region of the Lower Nile. This refers to the southern conquest of the north at a time much anterior to the rise of the famous ruling dynasties of Egypt. Set was the god and the northern
people, the Libyan Semites of the Delta, the Anu, while Horus, the skygod with his emblem of the falcon, was worshipped by the southern Egyptians. Hawk continued to be the godly symbol of authority of the ancient kings of united Egypt.

Who effected this conquest and union of the Upper and Lower Egypt no one can tell, but the legends credit Mena, or Menes, with accomplishing the difficult task. This Mena is supposed to have founded the first of the famous Dynasties of Egypt.

**Early Dynasties, The Old Kingdom**

In course of some thirty-five centuries Egypt was ruled by thirty-one dynasties of kings of which the 27th and 31st were Persian. Persians were succeeded in Egypt by Greeks and the possibility of an Egyptian revival was put to an end. Historians have divided the periods of the Egyptian history into groups of Kingdoms and Dynasties. They are classed as the Old Kingdom, the Middle Kingdom, the Empire, and the Sait Age. The first of these covers the annals of the Dynasties I-VI (c. 3500-2631 B.C.), the second of the Dynasties XI-XIV (c. 2375-1800 B.C.), preceded by an interlude of chaos, the third of the Dynasties XVIII-XX (c. 1580-1100 B.C.), preceded by another chaotic interlude and followed by an epoch of divided rule from rival capitals, and the last of the Dynasties XXVI (c. 663-525 B.C.).

The annals of the first few dynasties are very obscure. Their kings are mere names and their exploits mostly legendary. Some tables of their names have been preserved both in the Greek and earlier local sacred records but they too are confused, and are of doubtful import, their order many a time disturbed and sequence broken. Sometimes it is even difficult to distinguish historical names from those divine.
One name, that of Mena, however, stands out both in the Egyptian and Greek records as the founder of the First Dynasty of Egyptian kings. Although his historicity too has been questioned by some, he may be accepted as perhaps the first human king to have ruled over the united Nile valley. How the Neolithic man in the valley of the Nile developed into the citizen of the 1st Dynasty is difficult to say, but we know for certain that in course of the early centuries the land fell to the power of a family of rulers among whom hereditary succession had already been established. This family came from a place called Teni (Greek This or Thinis) in Middle Egypt. Mena (Menes) himself was a king of this family who moved his royal residence to the gate of the Delta. The new capital was called Memphis which continued to be the royal residence and commercial centre down to the latest periods of Egyptian history. Today it is the great mound of Monf, Tel-el-monf, at Mitraheni. God Thoth is supposed to have given him the laws with which he governed his kingdom from a new capital Memphis which he founded. He was a real father and teacher of his people whom he civilized, gave them a modern mode of living in which the use of 'tables and couches' was a marked luxury. Mena is credited with a number of important works of which the most outstanding was perhaps the building of a great dam to protect Memphis from the inundations of the Nile which even today serves as a bulwark for the province of Giza against the terrific floods of the river. Perhaps Mena also built the first temple of the metropolis, the temples of Ptah, and regulated service in the temple. Mena was the hero-king of the ancient Egyptians and was honoured and worshipped as a god.

Teta (Athetais, Atu) is the next name in the ancient records. He is supposed to have built the royal castle of Memphis. He was interested in medicine and perhaps wrote a treatise on anatomy. Those that followed are
sheer names on the list, mere legends in the current of time. Ata's reign was disturbed by the breaking out of a great plague. Sem-Ti and Semsu were perhaps kings of some consequence. Pestilence and epidemic rendered the rule of the latter unfortunate.

It is not easy to say who founded the 2nd Dynasty. Kakaus' name, standing second on the lists, is indeed important, for he was responsible for the institution of the worship of the Apis-bull. But the greatest dynasty, without doubt, was the king Baneteren (Binothris or Biophis) who established the legitimacy of female succession. This declaration was the first of its kind in history. In Egyptian history this decree was of immense importance to which even the Greek Ptolemies succumbed when they came to hold the sceptre of Egypt. Baneteren thus was the first feminist of the world. Send or Senedi was the next important ruler. His name signified 'terror' which may suggest some conquests to his credit. He was certainly worshipped. Khasekhem seems to have been another important historical figure who held his court in a great fortress palace and who is said to have conquered both the north and the south. He was himself a southerner who married Ne-maat-Hap, the last of the long line of the 2nd Dynasty, renewed the union of the two powers, and assumed the significant sobriquet of Khasekhemui ('Appearance of the Two Powers'). He built an enormous tomb for himself at Abydos.

The names of the rulers of the 3rd Dynasty are greatly confused and their sequence is gravely doubtful. But the most important figure of the line was Tjeser (Zoser), perhaps the son of Khasekhem. Tjeser (c. 3150 B.C.) enjoyed the assistance of a genius of the name Imhotep, the first scientist and artist. A physician of great repute, he is credited to have introduced the first principles of both medicine and architecture. The great structure of the pyramids
owed much to his vision and the king followed his advice in every incident of his administration. The Egyptians later worshipped him as a god. Tjeser was a conqueror of some dimensions and the builder of the first pyramid of stone, the Step-Pyramid of Sakkara with its admirable temple. Built under the active instructions and guidance of Imhotep, this funerary temple had excellent lotus columns and limestone panelled walls. The stepped pyramid of Sakkara, a terraced structure of stone, set the style of Egyptian tombs for centuries. The reliefs 'full of realism and vitality' and the fluted shafts and other remains created models difficult to rival in the contemporary world. Perhaps the first likeness of an Egyptian monarch has been preserved in the stone statue of Tjeser himself which, despite the blows of centuries, retains the look of a powerful sovereign. Sa-Nekht, his brother, probably succeeded him. Another king of this dynasty, Nefarka, deserves mention for the unsuccessfully began the huge rock-cut excavation at Zawiyet el-Aryan, south of Giza.

With the 3rd Dynasty the archaic period ends and the epoch of the Great Pyramids begins. During the rule of the 3rd Dynasty mining operations were carried on a large scale and Egyptian merchants made their appearance in the trade centres of the Mediterranean Sea and the state was enriched.

The Age of the Pyramids

The pyramids of Egypt have attracted visitors perhaps ever since they were built. Herodotus and Diodorus were lavish in their compliments to the great architects of antiquity who erected these massed enormities of solid masonry and visitor after visitor, nation after nation, has gone on paying tributes to those wonders of the Nile. Egypt is the Pyramids. The country has become identical with its architectonic achievement which time has not succeeded in
destroying. Pyramids epitomize the history of an epoch.

As the visitor drives to the south-west of modern Cairo and approaches the low ridge of the desert jutting up at the edge of the cultivated north-west of ancient Memphis, triangular structures of rocks loom large on the horizon and strike the sight. These are the pyramids, of which the biggest was called Khut, 'the Horizon' itself. They signalize an age which had attained all the essentials of a civilization as fully developed as our own as early as 3000 B.C. They have stood there in the full glare of the Egyptian sun under the cold canopy of the sky for more than five thousand years and, despite the vandalism of man and blows of time, they have disdained symptoms of decay.

The pyramids have been styled as the greatest among the seven wonders of the ancient world. They symbolize death, not life. The Egyptians lived under the perpetual fear of the life to follow after death, of the justice to be meted out to them after they had passed into the region of eternal chaos. Life to them became a period of preparation for the life to come and their kings planned all their life and built during the recesses between their conquests these great monuments to house their corpses which must live in a state of regality in death as they had lived in life. In a way the life beyond death was an extension of life itself. The grip among the mortals over life is such, the love for living and the dread of dying is so great among them, that they imagine a world which would still sustain their desires after they have left the mortal coil.

The purpose of building the pyramids was religious. They were tombs for protecting the corpses of the pharaohs. The Egyptians believed that they had two souls of which one, called Ka, was their double which lived as long as the body, though dead, endured. Thus to keep it alive it was essential that the body was kept intact and ensured against hunger, violence and decay. The corpse was to be
fitted out for the last journey and the final rest. The pyramids alone were the answer. They were huge structures of solid rocks containing dark chambers to receive the great coffins, the royal sarcophagi. Khufu’s pyramid piled up two and a half million blocks, some of them weighing more than a hundred and fifty tons. A low, narrow and secret passage led to the chamber where the body was to rest. Crawling on all fours a visitor can get into the damp and gloomy centre where Khufu and his queen lay buried in undisturbed secrecy. The sarcophagus of the great pharaoh lies in its place but is broken and empty for neither the awestriking stupendous monument nor the curses incised on the coffin and the fear of all the gods invoked could deter the ancient thieves who made their way through the secret passage and helped themselves with all the covetable luxury that lay stored there.

Ka was conceived as a minute image of the body and was to be fed, clad and looked after by servants. Most of the requirements were provided and the rest including the servants were shewn to be present through drawings. In fact all the incidents of living from the tilling of the fields to the harvesting of the crops and setting the victuals on the table were sketched and painted on the walls around and curses against defilers were hieroglyphed on the sarcophagus.

Towering high over the necropoles of the common Egyptians these great pyramids of kings were meant to house the sarcophagi and serve as tombs and sepulchres at the end of their pompous toils on the earth. The prospect of that arid expanse preserves endless remains of funerary temples, buildings of hewn stone, pillared courts with outer temples and inner fanes, with magazines and store-houses packed to capacity with the objects denied to the living, needed for the dead. Amidst these deadly environs did Khufu, Khafra and Menkaura build their domes of the
dead from where there was no returning to the world of the living.

Seneferu heads the list of the kings of the 4th Dynasty and begins the Age of the Pyramid-builders. Tjeser had already built the Step-Pyramid near the city, Seneferu built farther south at Dahshur and Medum; Khufu returned to the vicinity of the capital where Khafra and Menkaura followed him. They all built their pyramids there. The greatest of them all was one built by Khufu, 476 ft. high on a base of 764 ft. square originally, now 450 and 730 ft. respectively.

Khufu’s vital energy and brutal drive built this first wonder of the world of architecture which became as great a symbol of awesome structure as a monument representing tears of the people. Herodotus draws the picture of the cruel activities of the pharaoh during the building of the first great pyramid in the following words: “. . . . Cheops (Khufu), coming to reign over them, plunged into every kind of wickedness, for that, having shut up all the temples, he ordered the Egyptians to work for himself. Some, accordingly, were appointed to draw stones from the quarries in the Arabian mountains down to the Nile, others he ordered to receive the stones when transported in vessels across the river. And they worked to the number of a hundred thousand men at a time, each party during three months. The time during which the people were thus harassed by toil lasted ten years on the road which they constructed, and along which they drew the stones; a work, in my opinion, not much less than the Pyramid”. Khafra’s pyramid is 443 ft. high while Menkaura’s barely attained an elevation of 216 ft.

Khafra (Khafre, Chephren) too was a master builder, who built the second great pyramid. A cold looking gruesome portrait of this pharaoh is preserved in the Cairo Museum. He wears on his head the figure of the falcon, the
symbol of the royal authority and with his proud mien and piercing eyes, he looks every inch a king. He ruled for more than half a century with formal reserve and quiet strength. The portrait with a high forehead and a prominent nose brings out the traits of uncommon severity and of a will that must dominate. Khafra ruled over Egypt for fifty-six years. Menkaura seems to have been a simple man, his statues showing that he was more refined than Khafra, gentler than Khufu. His pyramid too is a humble structure, standing next to Khafra’s, and while Khufu’s pyramid’s face bore a marble casing and Khafre’s was capped with granite, Menkaura’s had been finished with bare bricks. Evidently the fortune of the family was falling and it did not take long for an adventurer of vigour to capture the throne of Menkaura.

Before we pass on to relate the history of the next generations of the pharaohs we may refer to the horrid and colossal figure of the Sphinx, bearing a lion’s body and a human head. The Greeks later formed composite figures half human and half fish, half man and half animal or bird. The Sphinx, formed around 2990 B.C., is the first of such composite figures in art. It squats besides the pyramids grimly clawing the sand and glaring at the visitor with cruel eyes.

Menkaura’s pyramid has been excavated and has afforded generous yields. The model set by these builders was continued by subsequent dynasts and the construction of pyramid remained a state affair with kings right down to the 14th Dynasty.

Pyramids were built undoubtedly at great costs by endless human labour. The word ‘pharaoh’ signifies a ‘dweller of the Big House’. That the king undoubtedly was. The phrase incidentally points to the unenviable character of the duab huts where the commoner must have dwelt. His earnings yielded the enormous revenues which
went to feed the sinews that raised the rocks aloft and shaped the pyramids. If we can believe the histories of Herodotus and Diodorus, people who were made to work for building for the dead to the negation of the needs of the living naturally resented it and the royal mummies were buried elsewhere for fear of reprisals at the hands of the labourers. Around the pyramids lay stretched the necropoles and the mustabas where the bodies of the courtiers of the kings were interred. We have no evidence to ascertain if in very ancient times the attendants of the kings had also to die in the manner of those in Ur to keep company with their royal dead.

Except for some records about Seneferu, we know nothing about these great builders of the age. A relief with an inscription represents him as a conqueror of the peninsula of Sinai. He was succeeded by Khufu followed by Dadfra and Khafra. Menkaura followed next and was himself succeeded by Shepseskaf and the 4th Dynasty probably ended with him.

The kings of the 5th Dynasty founded by Useref, continued to build pyramids and their funerary temples at Abusir, south of Giza, mark the apogee of the remarkable development of art and architecture under the rulers of the 4th-Dynasty. For the first time they come to bear reliefs on their walls depicting scenes from the life of the dead king. The builders of these pyramids were Sahura, Neferririkara and Neuser-Ra. The last of the Dynasty, Unas, built his pyramid at Sakkara, south of Abusir, and got the walls of his inner chambers inscribed with incantations to ensure the safety of his spirit in the next world.

Teta founded a new dynasty, the 6th. But the most noted potentate of this family of rulers was Merira Pepi I. His activities embraced the entire land from the Delta and Sinai to Elephantine and Sahal. Great stone temples had already appeared with the 4th and 5th Dynasties. Pepi
developed activities in that direction to an unprecedented limit. He built lifesize images of bronze plates fastened with nails. South also attracted his attention and he sent punitive expeditions to "the Sand-Dwellers" of the Isthmus of Suez and the gulf coast. Pepi passed on an extensive domain to his two sons and soon after the dynasty ended. Pepi II, one of the early pharaohs, had ruled longer than any ruler in history, for ninety-four years, from 2738 to 2644 B.C. His death was followed by anarchy and chaotic darkness which persisted for about four centuries. The pharaohs lost control over their domains and local feudal barons took possession of them defying the centre when there was one and occasionally cancelling and overruling them.

Decay soon overtook the 7th and 8th Dynasties too and they started disintegrating and falling off. Alien raids made life in the Delta insecure and foreign intrusion necessitated a change of capital. The capital was thus moved to Herakleopolis. Among the 9th and 10th Dynasties only a few kings deserve mention, namely, Khati I, Tefa-ba, and Khati II.

Thebes had now become practically independent. Memphis had shrunk into a shadow of glory while Thebes had grown in power and importance. A new era thus began ushering in what is called the Old Theban of the Middle Kingdom. The Theban epoch witnessed great changes in the land of the Nile. Civil wars and luckless encounters with the Shepherd invaders from the east broke the backbone of resistance and finally the Shepherd kings or the Hyksos, as they were called, succeeded in establishing their sway over Egypt where they ruled for several generations. Their overthrow and expulsion finally was rejoiced by the Egyptian people as a national event.

**The Middle Kingdom**

While the 10th Dynasty driven from Memphis ruled
at Herakleopolis the 11th Dynasty prospered at Thebes. The real founder of the dynasty was Uahankh but because of his greatness Neb-hapet-Ra was later regarded a great ruler and almost the father of the royal line of Thebes. Perhaps he established his authority over the entire country. He excavated for himself, his queen and concubines, the oldest rockcut royal tomb and a long gallery extending far beneath the mountain at Der el-Bahri (in the western necropoles opposite Thebes) ending in a chamber which originally held his coffin. It seems that his concubines (the priestesses of goddess Hathor) were all slain at the death of the king to accompany him to the next world. Courtiers and slaves were killed and buried with kings in the time of the 1st Dynasty, and the custom held on till as late as the time of Amenhetep II. Neb-hapet-Ra fought Libyans, Nubians, and Semites and he seems to have invaded as far as southern Palestine.

Neb-hapet-Ra was succeeded by Sankhkara Mentuhetep whose reign was distinguished by an expedition to the land of Punt by Henu. Henu reached the Red Sea by the Hammamat road and then sailed down to Somaliland and returned laden with incense, gum and myrrh.

Amenemhat I, the prime-minister of Sankhkara, founded the 12th Dynasty. As to the historicity of the rulers of this line we are somewhat on surer ground. The lists are fairly in agreement with one another regarding their statements about these kings. Amenemhat was a vigorous ruler but loved peace and patronized the arts, which, architecture excepted, reached a height of excellence never equalled in Egypt either before or after. His peaceful reign provides its tone to the activities of his age of which we get a glimpse from his inscription. It says that he "cultivated grain and loved the harvest god: the Nile greeted him as did every valley; none was hungry in his age, none thirsted, and men dwelt in peace which he established and talked
about him and thus acclaimed him:” But his quiet temper aroused temptations in some of his courtiers and a few, whom he had raised to high office, conspired against him and gave him a tough time. He, however, suppressed the rising with a strong hand but took lesson from the result of his mildness and he left a scroll of advice for his son which shows how bitter he had become, how difficult it became for him later to trust a relative or friend.

The inscription runs thus:

Hearken to that which I say to thee,
That thou mayest be king of the earth; . . . .
That thou mayest increase good:
Harden thyself against all subordinates—
The people give heed to him who terrorizes them;
Approach them not alone.
Fill not thy heart with a brother,
Know not a friend. . . .

When thou sleepest, guard for thyself thine own heart;
For a man hath no friend in the day of evil.

The rulers of the 12th Dynasty were art lovers and builders. Senusert I joined the Nile with the Red Sea by a canal and thus provided a Suez to the ancient world and built the great temples of Heliopolis, Abydos, and Karnak. When the Nubian invaders became restive and moved towards Egypt he struck them back and compelled them to keep out of bounds and beyond the approaches of his realms. Half a score of colossal statues of this pharoah are exhibited in the Cairo Museum which tell how spirited he may have been.

The kings of this dynasty were energetic and Egypt enjoyed a period of unprecedented peace and prosperity. Amenemhat III reclaimed a whole province in the Fayyum and regulated the flow of water in and out of Lake Moiris. On the slopes of the tomb-hill of the kings were buried the
functionaries of state, stewards, physicians, and retainers of various ranks, each, like his lord, with his own funerary state of great rectangular wooden coffins and the models of servants and boatmen which were supposed to turn into ghostly ministrants in the underworld. The security of a problematic other world must rest indeed on certain destruction of human and other living beings!

The affluence and majesty of the 12th Dynasty is marked by the great temples its rulers built at Karnak, Helipolis, Bubastis, Koptos, and at Herakleopolis. Colossal statues of kings adorned the fanes and served for motifs for later monarchs to copy and emulate. Senusert I, the builder, erected the first splendid obelisks in Egypt. Greek historians have waxed eloquent over the famous labyrinth at Hawara which is but a funerary temple built by Amenemhat III in front of his pyramid containing numerous halls and corridors.

The epoch of the 12th Dynasty was noted particularly for its commercial expeditions. Caravans by land and ships by sea ferrated land and sea alike in search of commercial goods and barterable commodities. The east, south, west and north lay at the doors of Egypt through her intrepid expeditionists and sailors. No wonder that the land grew rich as never before and there was ample wealth to be spent on the splendour of buildings.

The dynasty also waged successful wars against the Nubians and added power and glory to the memorable line of rulers. Amenemhat III's reign marks the culmination of the Middle Kingdom. Two monarchs that followed him hardly deserve mention. They hastened the fortunes of the illustrious house down the road to ruin. They passed power to the rulers of the 13th Dynasty, hardly better than themselves, who in the gathering gloom of the approaching misfortune submitted to the Hyksos and entered abyss.
The Hyksos Kings

Hyksos kings, whom the Egyptians called ‘Shepherd Kings’ out of spite, were indeed Syrian Canaanites. The conquest was complete due to the dissensions of the Egyptian rulers. Another significant incident that changed the fortunes of war was the new method of warfare that the invaders introduced in their battles. This was the war-chariots and its horses. Horses, domesticated in Iran and introduced in western Asia by Iranians, replaced asses in chariot and its changed the shape of fighting. Egyptians themselves later employed horse-drawn chariots in Palestine and elsewhere to their advantage.

Ancient civilizations were mere isles in a sea of barbarism, prosperous settlements surrounded by hungry war-like hunters and herdsmen. The Hyksos nomads of western Asia broke down the wall of defence and they achieved in no time what the Nubians during their recurrent invasions could not. Breaking all resistance they plunged the Middle Kingdom into disorder, turmoil and disruption.

The Hyksos were cruel and unsparing to their enemies. They sacked and burnt their cities and razed the temples and drove women and children into captivity. They conquered both Memphis and Thebes and collected revenue from Lower and Upper Egypt with great force and hardship. These kings stayed behind their strongly garrisoned fastness-towns and emerged only to lead expeditions and to exact hated tributes. They squandered the accumulated wealth, destroyed much of the treasures and art and for two hundred years ruled Egypt with unprecedented hardship.

Manetho preserves a list of the most notorious of the pillaging barbarians. The most important of them was perhaps Sersenères Khian who ruled as a great pharaoh and dedicated statues of himself in the temple of Bubastis. He must have been a great overlord for relics bearing his
name have been discovered at places far apart, from Baghdad in Iraq and Knossos in Crete.

The Hyksos, ruling later than about 1650 B.C., became completely Egyptianized. They adopted full pharaonic titles and dignity, worshipped Egyptian gods and built temples for them. Some new elements of religion like the veneration of the naked goddess Ishtar and the Syrian winged sphinx made their appearance in Egypt now. Although there were at times risings against the usurpers, the latter always suppressed them and having completely overrun the country ruled it with an iron hand.

Among the Theban kings of the 13th Dynasty the best known was Nub-kheper-Ra. He was perhaps the greatest enemy of the Hyksos rule and his inscription in the temple of Min at Koptos denounces the officials who surrendered to the Hyksos and received the hated enemies in the temple. He caused depredations in the territories of the Hyksos but could not conquer the land of his fathers from them.

With Maa-ab-Ra and others the first Hyksos Dynasty (the 15th) came to an end. A new and more energetic 16th Dynasty with Nekara Khian and Apep II ascended to power and subjugated the whole of the south.

The Hyksos, however, throughout their rule in Egypt had been hated as usurping foreigners and revolts against them were never wanting. A war of liberation was fought sometimes between 1620 and 1573 B.C. The final revolt came, as usual, from the south. It is recorded that a long and bloody war was fought and Misphragmouthosis (Aahmes) finally expelled them. Kings having Sekenenra as their names assumed full royal titles to the defiance of the Hyksos and the war of liberation began in full swing. Sekenenra III was killed in battle, and was succeeded by a son of twelve, named Kames. The death of the king gave indeed a setback to the liberation movement for a while but it gained vigour as young blood ascended the scene of
affairs. Kames and his brothers one after another took up the challenge, fought the foreigners and met their end probably on the field of battle. At last when a third brother Nebpehtira, the youngest of them, mounted the crest of battle, the war was won. Memphis was captured, the Hyksos were crowded out of the land and Egypt was liberated. The liberator then founded a new, the 18th Dynasty.

The Restoration and the Empire

The new times indeed proved great in Egyptian history. Vigorous rulers of the 18th Dynasty, which Nebpehtira Aahmes I founded, proved great at home and greater abroad for only half a century after expelling the Hyksos, they were warring on Asiatic land. The dynasty now entered on its epoch of imperial greatness and marked the First Empire in Egypt. It lifted Egypt to greater power, wealth and glory. The Hyksos were broken and flying, bringing war and confusion into Palestine in their train. Kassites had weakened Babylonia by their rule and the Hittites had not yet penetrated far to the south. Western Asia lay open to the manoeuvres of a chance adventurer. Thothmes I, the second successor of Aahmes, seized the opportunity, crossed to the north and overran Palestine and Syria. And this was no inroad like the raids of the Egyptian kings of the 12th or 6th Dynasties but conquests that held forth. Egypt was now opening a new chapter, one of imperial glory. This new era of conquest affords infinitely interesting incidents to the historian and luckily his way to them does not lie in the dark for no period of Egyptian history is so resplendent with records as this. The famous Tell el-Amarna letters belong to this period and throw a flood of light on the events of the 15th century B.C.

The Anatolian Hittites were beyond the Taurus, the Aryan Mitannis far to the north-east, the Kassites absorbed in home affairs, and the land of Lebanon and the wealthy
cities of Syria between the Amanus Mountains and the Euphrates, Damascus already enjoying early fame among them, lay naked to the rapacious thrusts of the Egyptian ambition. Thothmes I rode down to the bank of the Euphrates which river he fixed as the northern boundary of his empire.

When old age approached the pharaoh took his daughter Hatshepsut to partnership with him on the throne. After his death his son, who was both her husband and step-brother, ruled Egypt as Thutmose II. He named Thutmose III, a son of his father by a concubine, as his successor. But his highly ambitious queen and half-sister Hatshepsut, who had been marking time, decided to ride the whirlwind and guide the storm. She set the young man aside and assumed the full title of the sovereign and ascended the throne in her own right. Since the people of Egypt were accustomed to be ruled by male pharaohs, the queen donned the male dress and wore a beard. She even caused herself to be portrayed on the monuments as a bearded and breastless monarch, and despite the use of feminine pronouns to refer her, she was styled as ‘Son of the Sun’ and the ‘Lord of the Two Lands’ in her inscriptions. She transformed herself into a male in every way but the determining gender for which shortcoming again she circulated a legendary story which told her people that she was an incarnation of the god Amon himself. The great god was said to have visited Hatshepsut’s mother Ahmasi in flood of ‘perfume and light’ and to have been received by her in gratitude. And the god, while taking his leave of his mortal love the queen, had announced that she would give birth to a daughter endowed with his own strength and valour who would rule the world with power, benevolence and compassion.

For twenty-two years she ruled her extensive domains in wisdom and peace and during her tenure she prospered
her land and equalled, even surpassed, many of the forgone sovereigns in stately splendour and kingly duties. She beautified Karnak where two basilisks stand to proclaim the power of her personality and the grandeur of her rule. At Der-el-Bahri she erected the tall temple which her father had planned to build. She got cut into the mountains west of the Nile a noble and ornate tomb which became a model for the succeeding kings to follow. Some sixty sepulchres were cut and shaped to house the body of Egyptian monarchs and the place came to be called the 'Valley of the Kings' Tombs'. Later this valley of the dead became so significant that, an Egyptian expression 'to go west', meaning to die, became current. The great queen died in peace and, despite her sex, kept her enemies abroad beyond the borders of Egypt for as long as she lived.

But the Syrian and other Asian barons were not easily to be denied their freedom and their suppression was to be weighed against the strength of the army that Egypt could afford to keep on the bank of the Euphrates. The Egyptian queen, despite her bravado and masculine attire, was, after all, a woman given to the luxuries of the harem and was naturally more interested in the glory of commercial and exploratory expeditions nearer home, or, at any rate, in what the danger of warfare listed least than in donning the battle habit. Her half-brother Thothmes languished in his inactive state of warlessness and fretted in silence while enemies on the Euphrates federated and mustered strong for a trial of strength with a country whose royal reins were held in the tender fingers of a slim woman.

The queen died and Thothmes III ascended the throne, which he had been only sharing with her until now, and assumed undivided power. For most of the period of his rule the emperor kept on campaigning and his epigraphical record on the wall of the corridor of the great temple of Amen in Karnak, the most graphic of the Egyptian re-
cords, details the incidents of his continuous punitive and predatory engagements.

Thothmes crossed the desert year after year to the land of the enemies abroad and made them lick the dust of their own soil. As many as seventeen military expeditions to western Asia were undertaken by him most of which have found detailed mention in the inscription. Tributes, rich and varied, poured into the royal coffers of Egypt. Enemies organized revolt after revolt but the strong hand of the Egyptian monarch dealt the necessary blow to scatter the confederation of the foes. March against one organized by the king of Kadesh has been very vividly described in the records. The enemy lay at Megiddo awaiting the arrival of the Egyptian army. While in the town of Yeham the latter argued against the chances of a march on the enemy who had taken position on the ridge which connects Carmel with Samaria and separates the plain of Sharon from that of Esdraelon, the plain beckoned to the Egyptian monarch to march on, which he did. Horse behind horse, they marched, man behind man, in Indian file, and compelled the foe to seek shelter within the fortress which was later reduced. Campaign followed campaign, hostages followed hostages, in order to keep the vanquished to their knees, but the spirit could not be broken of those levelled low for a time in western Asia. Booty and spoils weighed heavy with the victors, honour and freedom heavier with the vanquished. Tributes came from the banks of the Euphrates, from the Kassites, from the land of Kadesh on the Orontes and from Crete, but the spirit of the rebels could not be broken. Euphrates, any way, continued to be the boundary and the empire of Thothmes III reached the outskirts of the land of the Mitannis and the Taurus, of course not a very peaceful one, all the same of dimensions unprecedented in Egyptian history. The great pharaoh realized the importance of a navy and built a strong fleet which
made him the master of the Mediterranean world.

The task of administering such vast possessions was not easy and to the same Thothmes addressed himself now.

**The Organization of the Empire**

The great king held his vast dominions by means of a number of garrisoned fastnesses and spheres governed by deputies and illustrious officials of state. One such, Tahu-tia or Thutii, administered the far off Naharin and Phoenicia and the neighbouring islands. Besides keeping the intransigent princes within their prescribed loyal bounds, these governors collected and remitted regularly to the imperial exchequer rich tributes from their provincial sway. Gold and silver, sapphire and lapis-lazuli poured into the coffers of state from the grand marches of the empire.

A novel measure that Thothmes adopted to hold the ends of his empire foreshadowed the Roman and British inventions of later history. The Romans took the German and Thracian chiefs to Rome, made them Romans who aped Roman manners and kept the state of their rigid masters. So also did the British by founding colleges and public schools in India to train little native princes and chieftains, whose training completed in England, they proved the bulwark of the empire. Thothmes was the original inventor of this grand method. Sons and brothers of ruling chieftains were torn from their distant defying fortresses and were borne away to Thebes. As hostages they ensured, in the first instance, the good conduct of their ruling relations and by the time they repaired to their native lands to succeed to their respective heritage they had been completely Egyptianized and rendered utterly incapable of taking field against their erstwhile masters. The expanding harem of the Egyptian monarch further cemented the process as the royal lady adding to the list brought affection to bear on the relentless feuds and, if not the contemporane-
ous, the generation that followed effected without doubt a cohesion of humane ties between the parties.

The genius of Thothmes III built up the first Egyptian Empire which the magnificence of Amenhetep consolidated and raised to a state of unforeseen splendour. Local authority had been wielded by powerful feudal families during the rule of the kings prior to XII Dynasty. It was fairly supreme even during the early years of that Dynasty but slowly it waned and came to be concentrated in the hands of later monarchs. As the lure of conquest, however, carried them away from Egypt, power had to be shared of necessity. There had been the office of the Vizier, that of the Tjate, or 'Man pre-eminent,' to whose charge the pre-occupied king now left the government of the metropolis and the control of the police. But he was the Vizier of the Southern regions alone with headquarters at Thebes. Later, one with like powers was appointed for the North also with his seat at Memphis. From the tomb inscription of Rekhmara and the Tell el-Amarna letters it is evident that he was the first Minister of state who was also responsible for dispensing justice. He was, besides, the superintendent of the collection of all taxes although he had no control over them.

They were received, treasured and spent on the pleasure of the king. The Treasurer was thus another important functionary of state. The Chamberlain too seems to have wielded ample authority and his proximity to the monarch, who was as much divine as human, naturally afforded him uncommon power.

The centre and fountain of all authority, however, was the king himself. He could not be out-ridden in any way. He was supreme in the internal affairs of the state—appointing and dismissing at pleasure all the important officials of his government and administering the revenues of the state as he thought best—as also in foreign relations for he ordered
his forces forth into the field and, as their supreme commander, led them against the enemy. Being a priest to the gods, he added a divine character to his temporal power. Slowly, however, there arose a formidable rank of powerful priests who were helped to assume their station of vantage in ecclesiastical affairs as in politics by Thothmes III. Amen was the supreme god and his priest the supreme officer.

Successors of Thothmes

Thothmes was succeeded about 1447 B.C. by Amenhetep II, his son, an incomparable soldier and a man of majestic build. His stern portliness bore the strength of a bull but he never over-reached the bounds of stately wisdom. He disdained cruelty as he abhorred rebellion. He would not go to war for mere conquest but likewise would not unsheathe his sword until he had brought the rebels to their knees and made them lick the dust if they had the daring to revolt. Lebanon rose against him and was made to taste the sharpness of his blade. By hurried marches the youthful monarch crossed the desert, overthrew the enemy and stamped out revolt. Then he battled across the Euphrates and subdued the Mitanni princes bearing Aryan names. When he returned home six captive kings followed his train. Five of these he himself cut down as an offering to god Amon. He ruled for thirty-two (or fifty-four) years and passed the reins of his government to his son Thothmes IV. Artatama gave his daughter in marriage to Thothmes IV, the successor of Amenhetep, and Dushratta became a faithful friend and close correspondent of Amenhetep III. The empire from the seat of the friendly Mitanni beyond the Euphrates to the Third Cataract of the Nile knew no disaffection until Amenhetep was laid in his grave.

Thothmes IV followed next on the throne of Egypt. He was the first Egyptian potentate to marry the daughter
of alien ruler, Aratama, the chief of the Mitannis. He died young at the age of thirty and was succeeded by his son Amenhetep III. The latter preferred to marry an Egyptian lady but continued to favour the Mitanni house for he took from it two wives one after another, first Gilukhipa, daughter of king Shutarna, and then her niece Tacukhipa, daughter of Dushratta. He, however, never gave them the status of the chief queen but only that of the auxiliary beauties of the harem, flames that might illumine the prospect without burning the skin.

The history of the times is recovered from the famous Tell el-Amarna letters of Middle Egypt. They bear numerous records, letters and despatches incised in cuneiform characters on clay tablets revealing to us inter-state activities during the middle of the second millennium B.C. To this priceless hoard of letters and to the epigraphical records in the Egyptian temples are added the invaluable documents, excavated at Boghaz Kyoi in Asia Minor, enriching our knowledge of the contemporary international politics. The letters are exceedingly human and where they are addressed by the Mitanni king Dushratta to Amenhetep and the queen, they became exceptionally touching and affectionate. Those received on the succession of Amenhetep IV to his father's possessions and harem—it was normal for Egyptian royal heirs to succeed as much to the inferior queens of their father, their step-mothers, as to his material riches—are profuse in their condolences. Among other writers of these letters and despatches were Assyrian, Babylonian and Hittite princes. It is evident from these letters that Egyptian kings were on the best of terms with the Kassite, Assyrian, Mitanni and Hittite rulers of Western Asia. Gold and precious gems flowed freely from one state to another as friendly tokens, tributes and bribes, for many a time a revolt had to be met with payments of gratuity. The Canaanites were generally in revolt, plundering Babylonian
and Egyptian caravans wherever advantageous and the
Hittites camouflaged their designs through letters of loving
assurances while they made bloody inroads whenever chan-
ces of vulnerability admitted them to the east and south-
east of the Taurus.

The southern points of the Egyptian empire were pene-
trating deeper into the heart of the continent. During pre-
vious reigns the bounds had reached the “Pure Mountain,”
the Nubian town of Napata, which had become the south-
ern centre of the diffusion of Egyptian culture. Amen-
hetep III carried his arms right down to the “Springs of
Horus,” perhaps the Sixth Cataract, a distance of a month’s
sailing from Napata. Upper Nubia thus came directly un-
der the sway of the Empire and thither Amenhetep III erec-
ted his splendid colonnaded temples as Amenhetep II and
Thothmes IV had done in Lower Nubia. Noble colon-
nades were added to the great Temple of Luxor at Thebes
beckoning to the tired traveller of the desert to that sole re-
treat of civilization in that sea of arid waste. He called his
temple after himself, Kha-m-maat, ‘on a part with Maat’,
the goddess of Right and Law, and installed his own statue
to be worshipped while he was still alive, unlike the current
usage, which worshipped the king only when he was dead.

A fine bust of Amenhetep III is preserved in the British
Museum. It gives one the impression of representing a strong
personality determined to have his way and to have his
commands carried. The Egyptian tradition makes him un-
commonly wealthy. He lived in an atmosphere of com-
fort and elegance and although his campaigns and expedi-
tions took him often away from his capital, he made The-
bes’s name ring through the quarters. The epigraphs and
records declare the endless riches which made the life of
the pharaoh of easy luxury. We learn from Erman that
the buildings of Thebes ‘surpassed in magnificence all those
of ancient or modern capitals’. Her streets were crowded
with merchants and her shops stored the goods received from the ends of the world brought by her caravans. Her imposing palaces were stacked with riches received in tribute from kings and princelings and from the rulers of the states vying with one another to do her a good turn and to keep her king in good humour.

Amenhetep IV—Akhenaten

Amenhetep III had been a magnificent figure. So was his queen the illustrious Tii, a woman of uncommon power and political stature in that ancient world. Their son was Amenhetep IV on whom the judgement of history has fallen in a queer way. Some historians have adjudged him mad like the Tughlak king of India, Muhammad the visionary, others have accorded him a brilliant intellect.

Brilliant Amenhetep IV indeed was, and if an Alexander or a Sankara can be credited with uncommon genius for having accomplished extraordinary feats of valour or mind before the age of thirty, Amenhetep's achievement fell well within this range of age. He died about twenty-five when he had already declared his rebellious faith a decade earlier. He founded his new religion when he was barely fifteen. Great insight was needed to see what he saw, greater courage to say what he said. Christ had to pay with his blood for what he saw and said, the Prophets before him had to pass into bondage for the same, and, much later, the great seer of the desert had to seek asylum in an unfriendly city, but Amenhetep died a king, and a natural death defying the knife of the murderer and the noose of the bigot.

Centuries before the official doctrine of monotheistic philosophy was registered among concepts and advanced by philosophers, Amenhetep had preached it. He refused to believe in a plurality of gods or in a dismal divinity of death. He preferred to worship life and the brilliant efful-
gent cause of life, the sun-disk. Then again not the mere sun-disk as a frightened savage but the divine and conscious single pervasive power behind it. This was a brilliant idea. True the Prophets later talked about a Jehovah who had been a singular god even to their forefathers, but the same was vague, while again it cannot be traced in its singleness of purpose to the time anterior to Amenhetep. This boy of fifteen founded his doctrine in the first quarter of the 14th cy. B.C., before the Dorian Greeks had swooped down the rocky plains of the Olympian gods, before Troy had risen to eminence, before the great battle of the Mahabharata had been fought, indeed long before Zarathustra, Buddha, Confucius and Lao Tzu had preached their faith. His was without doubt the first doctrinaire in history.

Born of a stately father and a majestic mother he inherited the genius of both, but in a different way. He came to the throne a child and for a few years had to live under the strain of the regency of that brilliant queen Tii and per force of circumstances had to accept the feminine control of a masterly woman. Born in purple of a luxurious art-loving father and an energetic, perhaps an Aryan or semi-Aryan mother, all the requisites for the creation of a striking and abnormal character were present. A boy of absolutely original brain, untrammeled by considerations of traditions or usage, his genius had full play. Insensate and oblivious to everything else but his own 'truth', he preached his heresy and stood courageously by it.

The reaction was immense and disastrous, for the great and formidable priests arose against him. The sun had been worshipped before but only as one of several gods and now he alone was to hold the field to the complete negation of the rest. Undeterred by consequences the young king carried the process of Atenizing the land. Temples in Egypt and Palestine of the Sun-disk, were built, names
of other gods were erased to make room for the new one and he himself underwent a new christening and assumed a new name, Akhenaten, 'Pleasing to the Sun-Dusk.'

His impassioned composition, 'the fairest surviving remnant of Egyptian literature', addressed to his god Aten, is an immortal piece of poetry. It runs thus:

Thy dawning is beautiful in the horizon of the sky,
O living Aten, Beginning of Life.
When thou risest in the eastern horizon,
Thou fillest every land with thy beauty.

Thou art beautiful, great, glittering, high above every land,

Thy rays, they encompass the land, even all that thou hast made.

Thou art Re, and thou carriest them all away captive;
Thou bindest them by thy love.

Though thou art far away, thy rays are upon earth;
Though thou art on high, thy foot-prints are the day,

When thou settest in the western horizon of the day,
The earth is in darkness like the dead;

They sleep in their chambers,
Their heads are wrapped up,
Their nostrils are stopped;
And none seeth the other,

All their things are stolen
Which are under their heads,
And they know it not.

Every lion cometh forth from his den,
All serpents they sting. 

The world is in silence,

He that made them resteth in his horizon.

Bright is the earth when thou risest in the horizon.
When thou shinest as Aten by day
Thou drivest away the darkness.
When thou sendest forth thy rays,
The Two Lands are in daily festivity,
Awake and standing upon their feet
When thou hast raised them up.
Their limbs bathed they take their clothing,
Their arms uplifted in adoration to thy dawning.
In all the world they do their work.

All cattle rest upon their pasturage,
The trees and the plants flourish,
The birds flutter in their marshes,
Their wings uplifted in adoration to thee,
All the sheep dance upon their feet,
All winged things fly,
They live when thou hast shone upon them.

The barks sail upstream and downstream,
Every highway is open because thou dawnest.
The fish in the river leap up before thee,
Thy rays are in the midst of the great green sea.

Creator of the germ in woman,
Maker of seed in man,
Giving life to the son in the body of his mother,
Soothing him that he may not weep,
Nurse even in the womb,
Giver of breath to animate every one that he maketh!
When he cometh forth from the body ... on the day of his birth,

Thou openest his mouth in speech,
Thou suppliest his necessities.

When the fledgling in the egg chirps in the egg,
Thou givest him breath therein to preserve him alive.
When thou hast brought him together
To the point of bursting the egg,
He cometh forth from the egg,
To chirp with all his might.
He goeth about upon his two feet
When he hath come forth therefrom.

How manyfold are thy works!
They are hidden from before us,
O sole god, whose powers no other possesseth.
Thou didst create the earth according to thy heart
While thou wast alone:
Men, all cattle large and small,
All that are upon the earth,
That go about upon their feet;
All that are on high,
That fly with their wings.
The foreign countries, Syria and Kash,
The land of Egypt;
Thou settest every man into his place,
Thou suppliest their necessities ....

Thou makest the Nile in the nether world,
Thou bringest it as thou desirest,
To preserve alive the people ....

How excellent are thy designs,
O Lord of eternity!
There is a Nile in the sky for the strangers
And for the cattle of every country that go upon
their feet ....

Thy rays nourish every garden,
When thou risest they live,
They grow by thee.
Thou makest the seasons
In order to create all thy work:
Winter to bring them coolness,
And heat that they may taste thee.
Thou didst make the distant sky to rise therein,
In order to behold all that thou hast made,
Thou alone, shining in the form as living Aten,
Dawning, glittering, going afar and returning.
Thou makest millions of forms
Through thyself alone;
Cities, towns and tribes,
Highways and rivers.
All eyes see thee before them,
For thou art Aten of the day over the earth....

Thou art in my heart,
There is no other that knoweth thee
Save thy son Akhenaten.
Thou hast made him wise
In thy designs and in thy might.
The world is in thy hand,
Even as thou hast made them.
When thou hast risen they live,
When thou settest they die;
For thou art length of life of thyself,
Men live through thee,
While their eyes are upon thy beauty
Until thou settest.
All labour is put away
When thou settest in the west....

Thou didst establish the world,
And raised them up for thy son....
Akhenaten, whose life is long;
And for the chief royal wife, his beloved,
Mistress of the Two Lands,
Nefer-nefret-aten, Nofretete,
Living and flourishing for ever and ever.

(Translation by Breasted)

A great poem of human history, it is the first exposition of monotheism composed seven hundred years before Isaiah vastly influencing the great Hebrew prophet and his powerful composition, Psalm civ.
Unlike his father, Akhenaten was a man of peace and refused to go on expeditions of conquest in the Asian lands. He even refused to go out of his capital and from there, in pursuit of his faith he declared war on the exceptionally opulent priests of Amen and gods fattened on gold and land and cattle and on all the hosts of supporters of the old gods and of the ancient regime. In the great temple at Karnak the priests were keeping a harem of concubines, supposed to serve the sexual needs of god Amon, but actually amusing the clergy as keeps. This sacred harlotry was hateful to the young emperor whose private life was a model of fidelity; “the blood of the ram slaughtered in sacrifice to Amon stank in his nostrils; and the traffic of the priests in magic and charms, and their use of the oracle of Amon to support religious obscurantism and political corruption disgusted him to the point of violent protest......

His youthful spirit rebelled against the sordidness into which the religion of his people had fallen; he abominated the indecent wealth and lavish rituals of the temples, and the growing hold of a mercenary hierarchy on the nation’s life. With a poet’s audacity he threw compromise to the winds, and announced bravely that all these gods and ceremonies were a vulgar idolatry, that there was but one god—Aton.”

The fury of the priests of Amen had no bounds; the bitterness of the soldiers and statesmen, who saw the genius and industry of the bygone ages thus dissipated by the caprice of a boy, called him mad and rushed against him; the Egyptian masses lashed to action by the frenzied fury of the priests and nobles in unrelenting hatred nicknamed him the ’Criminal of Akhenaten’. But Akhenaten bore the brunt with courage and his intrepidity and application triumphed. The first casualty to the faith was his own sister Nefretiti whom he had married five years earlier, the nobles of the court were the next and next to them those who seemed to see light. His cause triumphed and he died a natural death.
His own poetical composition inscribed on the walls of the Tell-el-Amarna tombs proclaim in beautiful hymns the tenets of his faith which sound so singularly Upanishadic.

A bust of young Akhenaten discovered at Tell-el-Amarna, reveals a feminine delicacy and a poetic sensi-
vity pervading through his slender frame. One wonders if such a frail frame may have wrought a revolution dethron-
ing the traditional gods and challenging their all powerful priests. And yet it did.

The great pity with this remarkable visionary and in-
novator was that he had no patience, did not leave his idea to take root and grow with time—never realizing that the Fourth Dimension could then also have its way as a physico-
mathematical law. He became fanatical in the propaga-
tion of his faith. He ordered that not only the names of all the gods other than Aten be chiselled away but all the names of men too bearing Amen as part of them be erased from the epigraphs. The thoroughness with which he got his order executed turned a piece of euphemism with people and caused a trepidation in his own heart when it was found that his father's name, which bore Amen as a part of it, had been cut away from a hundred monuments. This was disfiguring and dishonouring the ancestral dead and shocked the people of Egypt. In their houses and in the palaces of the rich the ancient gods continued to be wor-
shiped secretly until the priests and the people rose against him and the dependencies mutinied abroad.

Akhenaten's indifference to his foreign possessions threw the empire out of joints and new ethnic forces made their appearance across Mesopotamia. The Kassites had long humbled the Babylonians, the Hittites and the Mitanni, the great Aryan tribes, were already casting the die between them for the claims of authority over the region along the upper reaches of the Tigris and the Euphrates, and the Achaean Greeks were combining to set sail against
the ancient Troy and were wrecking the chalcolithic civilization of Minos and his Crete. Alarming messages arrived from Syria and its neighbourhood and Egyptian governors wrote and wrote—hundreds of letter-tablets unearthed at Tell-el-Amarna prove it—appealing for reinforcements. The saintly king hesitated to help aggression maintained and the tenons of the vassals flew out of the sockets of the empire which was soon reduced to a common state. Heartbroken at finding that all men who mattered at home and abroad, arrayed against him, Akhenaten died when he was hardly thirty, in 1362 B.C. His doctrine had been preached too early to an ungrateful people with whom peace was of little value and who nicknamed him as ‘the Great Criminal’.

It is indeed a pity that Akhenaten had no male issue. If he had one it may be surmised perhaps he might have found through him an instrument to further his newly founded doctrine. Whatever is said about his claims to greatness or failure nobody can doubt the happiness in which he lived within his household. No king of history is known to have loved his wife with such tenderness and his daughters with such warmth. He used to make pledges and avowals with words: ‘by my heart’s happiness in my queen and my children.’ He calls the queen ‘the mistress of his happiness whose voice renders him infinitely joyous.’ One of the carvings of the time portrays him embracing his queen, another depicts him ‘riding in a chariot through the streets, engaged in pleasantries with his wife and children,’ and a third shows him sitting on the throne with his queen while their children frolic around them.

Amenhetep IV, Akhenaten, was one of those men who do not leave male heirs behind. He had six issues but all daughters, and he was succeeded by a short-lived shadow, Smenkhkara, on the Egyptian throne. The light that went out in that desert was never sought to be revived but to the
historian to whom nothing dies, this reviler of the ancient faith, this preacher of heresy, this insane Akhenaten was indeed the first doctrinaire of history.

The Successors of Akhenaten (c. 1362-1321 B.C.)

Smenkhkara, a son-in-law and successor of Akhenaten, was soon followed on the Egyptian throne by Nebkheperura Tutenkhamen, a better known figure, whose tomb has yielded an enormous quantity of gold. Tutenkhamen, himself perhaps a son of Amenhetep III by an inferior wife, married the third daughter of Akhenaten. He began his reign as an Atenite but he soon returned with his court to the older religion. He even attempted to complete the colonnade in the temple of Amen at Luxor. He at once became a favourite and a patron of the priests and a devotee of the ancient gods. His father-in-law Akhenaten had given him the name Tutenkhaten which he changed into Tutenkhamen. He restored the ancient gods to their old status and their priests to their former office and power. He restored all the names too which had been eroded by Akhenaten and got the latter’s name removed from all records. He left the capital at Akhetaten—City of the Horizon of Aten—, built by his father-in-law and beautified with sculptures and paintings of the first order, and repaired to Thebes, the ancient capital of the Egyptian kings.

Tutenkhamen was only eighteen when he died and he would have been a mere nobody in history if his discovery by Howard Carter had not been made with an enormous quantity of gold. The whole world waited for the exhuming of his mummy and journals and newspapers all over the world published an account of the incredible way it was dug out. For years after the discovery newspapers went on publishing romantic tales about the death of all those who had been in any way connected with handling and thus blaspheming the corpse as a result of the curse imprinted
on it. The gold was weighed and the gems counted but the most valued, indeed priceless, was the garland of flowers which Tutenkhamen's sixteen year old queen had left on the coffin of her departed husband while taking leave of him. It is preserved in the Cairo Museum. The flowers have faded but their colours can still be distinguished.

Tutenkhamen ruled for about a decade and was followed by Ai, originally a priest officer, soon supplanted by Horemheb after a short reign of five years. Horemheb had first been the 'Mayor of the Palace' and later the Commander-in-Chief of the Egyptian forces. It was through his help and influence that Ai had succeeded to the throne and perhaps it was to him again that he owed his deposition.

Horemheb was a fanatical devotee of Amen and he completed the restoration to the orthodox faith. This rigidly conservative monarch is a singularly dull and uninteresting figure in Egyptian history. He was however, a soldier, with some organizing ability, for he is credited with the promulgation of a revised code of laws on a stele in the temple of Karnak. He ruled for more than two decades and closed the 18th Dynasty. He restored Egypt's prestige abroad.

The 19th Dynasty

About 1320 B.C. a new dynasty, the 19th, came to capture power in Egypt. It was founded by Rameses I who ascended the throne of Horemheb. The family was probably of Lower Egyptian origin although Thebes continued to be the national capital.

The dynasty sought to revive the supremacy of Egypt over western Asia and came into sharp collision with the Hittites who held sway over most of that region. Rameses I, the founder of the family, was not destined to rule long and soon left the sceptre to his son Seti I. Seti marched into Palestine against Mursil the Hittite and recovered that province. He, however, desisted from further war and de-
voted his energies to nation-building activities at home. The most important of them was the erection of a great royal funerary temple at Abydos. The architecture of the temple is commonplace but the sculptured reliefs are of the first order. It registers the high watermark in that kind of Egyptian art. The famous Hypostyle Hall begun by his father was mainly built by him although completed by his successor, Rameses II. The solemn structure was matchless in majesty and magnificence. This hall at Karnak is “a very forest of a hundred and forty gigantic columns, crowded close to keep out the exhausting sun, flowering at their tops into spreading palms of stone, and holding up, with impressive strength, a roof of mammoth slabs stretched in torrid granite from capital to capital.” When he died about 1300 B.C. he was interred in one of the most ornate tombs of Egypt.

Rameses II next followed on the throne of Egypt about 1300 B.C. and enjoyed one of the longest reigns in Egyptian history. He was a great self-aggrandizer and he lost no opportunity to bring his name into display by inscribing it after erasing others’, or by attaching his own statues to temples that he restored. His most ambitious work was a gigantic structure bearing pillars and a colossus of himself. It is generally known as the Ramesseum. On its exterior are depicted scenes of the numerous wars that he waged. The most important of these lasted for about fifteen years and was fought against the Hittites. It was concluded by a treaty and marked the decline of Egyptian power which could not be arrested despite the efforts of such energetic monarchs as Rameses III and Shishak. Rameses II died about 1234 B.C. (or 1225 B.C.).

Before passing on to other events mention must be made of the admirable text of the treaty which is one of the most remarkable diplomatic documents of antiquity. This was the first instance in human history when an attempt
was made to adjust international relations through literary documents preserved in royal archives. Such documents were not entirely unknown among the political transactions of Asian princes—for example, between the rulers of Babylon and Assyria—but this one is the lone instance of its kind preserved to this day on the walls of Karnak and the Ramesseum in Egypt and—part of the cuneiform original draft—among the clay archives of Boghaz Kyoï in Asia Minor. The document is a rare specimen of order and logic and its wording strikes a most modern note.

The parties are placed on a footing of perfect equality. The protocol declares with uncommon equanimity that “There shall be no hostilities between them, for ever. The great chief of Khera shall not invade the land of Egypt, for ever, to take anything therefrom, and Rameses—Meriamen, the great prince of Egypt, shall not invade the land of Kheta, to take anything therefrom, for ever.”

Then follows the clause which reiterates the former treaties without recapitulating them. A few clauses deal with the important topics of extradition of political fugitives and of common emigrants from one country to the other anticipating the principle of international law that no man can change his country or his allegiance at his own will.

After the clause bearing divine witnesses there follows the final paragraph containing a description of Hittite figures and some seals including those of the contracting Hittite King Khattusil and his queen Pudukhipa.

What followed the conclusion of the treaty registers another specimen of international accord and amity during those remote times. Pudukhipa, the Hittite queen, received a letter from the queen of Rameses, Nefertari, expressing her delight at the restoration of peace. The peace did last throughout the reigns of both monarchs.

Thirteen years after the signing of the treaty, the
friendship of Egypt and Khatti (Hittite) was reaffirmed by
the marriage with Rameses of a Hittite princess, daughter of
Khattusil and Pudukhipa. The Hittite emperor made an
even unprecedented state visit to his brother-monarch bring-
ing in his train his daughter and vassals, and an im-
mense amount of presents in gold and silver. He journey-
ed in winter, much to the astonishment of the Egyptians, in
spite of snow in the passes of Taurus and rain among the
hills of Palestine. While wishing godspeed to the departing
Anatolians Rameses expressed the hope that they would
not meet with snow and ice in the northern passes on their
way back.

Before passing on to other events we may here assess
Rameses the man.

Rameses II, despite his heroics, was a man of parts.
His character combines the bravado of a misguided youth and
the calculated actions of a shrewd diplomat. In looks, as
evidenced by his statues, he was handsome and of fine
build. He owned a vast harem constituted of seve-
ral hundred wives and concubines. On them he
begot a hundred sons and fifty daughters, half a hund-
red more than the number Dhritarashtra of the Mahabharata
could list of his progeny, the Kauravas. In fact the child-
ren of Rameses were so numerous that they formed a class
by themselves from which the rulers of Egypt were drawn
for a whole century. Incest was not only permitted by the
Egyptian law and custom, and the pharaohs normally mar-
rried their sisters and shared their throne with them, but
they were enjoined to practise it imperatively as a rule in
order that the estates be not dismembered. The kings re-
ceived the harem of their father as other incidents of patri-
mony and could and many did marry their father’s wives
excepting their mother who had borne them. The daugh-
ters were normally left out of the range of such marriages,
but Rameses II married several of his daughters so that they
might have children bearing splendid physique like his own. Such was his notion of his own noble bearing. His bravado was after all not without foundation for he pushed the frontiers of his empire northward in western Asia thus reviving the glory of his ancients. He was brave to a fault and it was by dint of sheer personal bravery that he turned his defeat into victory at Kadesh where he trounced a great confederacy of Asiatic allies. One need not wonder that he caused to be inscribed on half a hundred walls the exploits of his reign. The hall at Karnak and the temple at Luxor proclaim his building activities, and the Ramesseum, though attesting to his self-glorification, marks his devotion to architectural enterprises. His colossi are still standing their ground all over the land. Shifting sands have filled now the great canal with which he had joined the Nile and the Red Sea. About half the surviving structures in Egypt, except the pyramids, are ascribed to him. No wonder that Rameses should have commissioned a poet to celebrate him in epic verse.

Meneptah succeeded Rameses II after the latter's death and ruled for about a decade. Of the two important events of his reign one was his successful campaign in Palestine and the other his breaking of the confederacy of the 'Northerners coming from all lands' that invaded Egypt.

After the death of Meneptah anarchy followed anarchy for a space of thirty years. Three kings ruled Egypt one after another, the last being Seti II. When he died throwing the land of the Nile into chaos and confusion, a Syrian adventurer captured the kingdom which was finally rescued by Setnekh. His son, Rameses III, bears a great name in Egyptian history. He sought to emulate Rameses II in every detail.

Rameses III's accession to throne, however, was symbolic of the last flicker of a dying flame. It spelt vigour, however. To the incessant wars of the two centuries and
a half since the invasion of Thothmes I had succeeded a peace, concluded by the Hittite-Egyptian treaty between Khattusil and Rameses II, a slumber of exhaustion, which was now brought to an end when the reign of Rameses III awakened his people to the realities of war and conflict. Egypt was aroused from her torpor and she assumed her stature once more, imposing and splendid, and kept it on until the artificial revival of Rameses III collapsed under his successors, and the empire fell into final decay. His model was far too inferior to his own genius but he preferred to toe the line and echo the vaunts of his great namesake.

The conflict opened with an invasion by the Libyans and Mediterranean tribes. Twice did they make their attempt and twice were they driven back into Libya. A third danger came from the east but the king beat it back. He saw that a vigorous offensive was the best defence. Advancing by sea and land along the coast towards Palestine, he fell with ships and chariots upon the barbarian host and inflicted upon it a complete defeat. "They were dragged, capsized, and laid low upon the beach; slain and made heaps from stem to bow of their ships. And all their belongings were cast upon the waters."

In one particular instance, however, Rameses III did not imitate his prototype; he embarked on no wars of aggression. He left Egypt peaceful and wealthy, wealthier perhaps than ever before. His records relate of endless riches in corn, gold and silver which he shared in common with the gods, a sad reflection indeed on the condition of the people who must have suffered the pangs of poverty amidst plenty, for the wealth of Egypt meant the wealth of its monarchs. The success of Rameses III at home was due mainly to his friendship with the priests which he won through his immense gifts to the temples of the gods. Much of the loot he brought from his conquered foes and
the taxes he levied on the provinces went to the coffers of the church. He donated '32,000 kilograms of gold and a million kilograms of silver and a yearly tribute of 185,000 sacks of corn' to the priests of Amen. The priests owned 750,000 acres, i.e. one-seventh of all arable land in Egypt 500,000 heads of cattle, 107,000 slaves and revenues from 169 towns in Egypt and Syria. Gods fattened while men languished for victuals. No wonder that his old age was troubled, howsoever little, by a harem conspiracy of menial servants and mercenaries. Rameses III died fairly old and was succeeded by his numerous sons one after another, all bearing his name.

The last of the Remessids was Rameses XI who ended his royal career about 1100 B.C. Ever since the death of Rameses III the Egyptian Empire had been tottering to a fall and the wealth, prestige and power of the priests had been growing enormously through the endless endowments and gifts of the pharaohs. Ultimately Herihor, the high-priest, quietly assumed the crown when Rameses XI died, closing with him the 20th Dynasty. One priest-king followed another on the southern throne while the north became independent under a new house. The record of the 21st Dynasty, which came to an end about 945 B.C., is one of power rotating between the North and the South, now divided now combined. The Egyptian Empire had ceased to exist.

The Last Phase

The record of the rule of the following dynasties, right down to the last, was one of gathering gloom. An energetic king like Sheshenk (Shishak) tried occasionally to save the situation by breathing life into the nostrils of dy ing Egypt, but nothing could arrest her downward march. Three thousand years are even otherwise no mean length of life for any nation and Egypt had lived her day. Decay
and death were her natural destiny. Ten dynasties, 22nd to 31st (of which two were foreign), had yet to rise and fall before Egypt could be finally extinguished as an independent power, first by Alexander and next by the Romans.

New powers kept on rising and crossing swords with the decrepit old giant and all spoils of adventure on the West Asian soil meant a strip cut out from Egypt's Asian possessions. Her frontiers went on shrinking as younger nations in the north became restive and ambitious and soon Egypt possessed nothing beyond her geographical boundaries. She was politically paralysed.

And yet a reference to the passing events that thread her story of incompetence and infirmity through occasional bursts of ambition to her final extinction will not be out of place here. The following pages relate the stages of her decline and ultimate disappearance into oblivion.

Sheshenk or Shishak founded the 22nd Dynasty after the death of Psusennes II. He was a successful military adventurer of Libyan descent who shifted his capital from Tanis to Bubastis. For over a century the kingdom of Egypt had been governed from two centres by two monarchs. Sheshenk at once joined the two crowns and terminated the theocratic rule by appointing his son as High-Priest. Sheshenk's triumphant march into Palestine was recorded on the walls of Karnak. The great Solomon was his senior contemporary in Palestine and Sheshenk awaited his opportunity which afforded itself five years after the death of that Jewish potentate. This was almost an attempt to revive the west Asian Egyptian Empire. Another attempt was made by his son Osorkon I, the successor of Sheshenk. The expedition was overwhelmed and the attempt proved singularly abortive.

The rest of the kings of the family were mere names. One of them, Osorkon II, however, is credited to have built a magnificent 'Festival Hall' at Bubastis to commemorate his
Sed festival. During his rule a new danger threatened Egypt. The Assyrians were building up their great empire and while their king Shalmaneser was measuring swords with his opponents at Karkar, he sent a trepidation through his Egyptian contemporaries and annexed Syria and Palestine.

The 23rd Dynasty was contemporary with the 22nd from about 850 B.C. The two houses fought a war which ended in the defeat of the former. The 23rd Dynasty had its capital at Thebes. After some time the kingdom north of Siut spilt into a dozen or more principalities and the rulers of the important ones assumed regal titles. They were all princes of the Bubastite family. In course of time an independent prince of Libyan descent and holding the region on the western border of the desert soon got ascendancy over all of them. This was Tefnakht who soon conquered the entire Delta, and, establishing himself at Memphis, he even essayed to subjugate the remaining parts of Egypt. Piankhi, the southern overlord, was ruling at Napata. He received representations from his vassals and had to send an army against Tefnakht. The conflict opened at Per-pega, near Herakleopolis, where a great battle was fought. It ended in the defeat of the northern confederates. Piankhi moved north reducing cities and fortresses and laid siege to Memphis itself and finally invested it while Tefnakht secretly abandoned the city and rode to North. After making his triumphant entry into the capital the conqueror received the submission of all the Delta kings at a solemn ceremony. Tefnakht was captured after a hot pursuit in the marshes. He sent in his submission and was pardoned on his declaring himself a vassal and after taking an oath of allegiance to his overlord. Piankhi returned to Napata in 721 B.C. after appointing his son Shabaka his regent in the North. Then it was that he came in touch with the Assyrian steel a year after when on his instigation Israel revolted against Shalmaneser V, who struck quickly at the rebels, and after his murder Sargon, his successor,
brought great consternation to the holy land. Not a soldier came from Egypt.

Shabaka, however, continued his intrigue. As a result Hamath and Damascus, and Samaria and Gaza rebelled against Assyria. Sargon was engaged in Babylonia, but leaving his operations there, he marched forthwith against the rebels, defeated the Syrians at Karkar, and crushed the Philistines and Egyptians at Raphia on the Egyptian frontier. The Ethiopians fled the field and Shabaka showed fair quickness in retreat. Egypt was spared the further humiliation of an attack for she bought off her enemy who was not slow to record this offering of gifts as tributes from the vanquished. Shabaka presently returned to the south, the north again gaining freedom under Tefnakht. Secret negotiations passed to and fro between the Egyptians and the rebels of Palestine on the instigation of the former. In 711 B. C. Shabaka moved again to North, this time as full-fledged king and overwhelmed the Lower Country burning alive its king Boknuref (Uahkara, Bokkhoris), the son of Tefnakht.

Shabaka pushed on with his intrigues in Palestine and when Sennacherib, the son and successor of Sargon, ascended the Assyrian throne he found the entire west in revolt. He struck at the rebels soon after and pushed on to Palestine battling across the countries of the west and accepting submissions of broken potentates. Shabaka rushed on to his northern frontiers and sent substantial succour to the rebels of Palestine though he himself failed to take the field against his formidable adversary. Sargon smote and the 'sons of the kings of Musur' disbanded making the best of their way back across the desert to Egypt. Some Ethiopian generals were taken prisoner but the rest found their way back home.

The next Assyrian ruler Esarhaddon was the son of Sennacherib and he resolved to destroy Egypt and thus pay her back for her intrigues during half the previous century. But all Egyptians had such abhorrence for all Asians and
could not be held down for long. They would endure no Hyksoses although their vigour had long damped. This fundamental fact the Assyrian emperor missed. The only way to win the Egyptian loyalty was to become Egypt's king, to ascend her throne and to accept her gods. But since this could not be acceptable to Esarhaddon or, later, to Ashurbanipal, the chances of making Egypt an Assyrian province too were lost.

Esarhaddon attacked the frontiers of Egypt in 675 B.C. but, nature taking the side of the Egyptians, the invasion did not prosper. A great storm compelled the Assyrian army to withdraw. In the following year the Assyrian legions entered the Delta although no conquest could properly be registered. Three years later (671 B.C.), however, Egypt was conquered. It was an answer to the Egyptian intrigues in western Asia. Tirhakah was the ruling pharaoh and he fled the field without fighting a single engagement. Although the danger of an Assyrian invasion had always been there, the pharaoh had done nothing to strengthen the national defences. He had been interested only in building temples by fleecing his subjects.

After arranging for an unbroken supply of water in the desert, Esarhaddon crossed the frontier, put the pharaoh to flight and stormed Memphis. Memphis was soon taken and its resistance was revenged by putting the city to the sword. After reducing the Delta and the land round Memphis and accepting the allegiance of the northern kinglets the emperor returned. But no sooner had he left the land of the Nile than Tirhakah descended suddenly like a storm and annihilated the Assyrian garrisons. Memphis at once fell to his might. Esarhaddon on getting the news was furious and essayed to return but was taken ill and died on the way. Egypt was saved from being laid waste.

Ashurbanipal, the mighty son of Esarhaddon, who ascended the Assyrian throne, at once addressed himself to the
Egyptian affairs. Tirhakah met him on his frontiers but was again defeated and Memphis was reoccupied. Ships transported the Assyrian army along the water course to Thebes which was taken without resistance. Kinglets and princelings were set up and reinstated all along the route, even at Thebes, where the governor had capitulated.

Tirhakah made yet another attempt to regain his possessions in the North but was beaten back by Assyrian generals and those princelings who had secretly negotiated with him were sent in chains to Assyria. Tanutamon invaded North soon after. Thebes fell, Memphis was taken with great slaughter of the Assyrian garrison and the Delta was secured. Ashurbanipal returned like lightning and recovered the Delta. Tanutamon fled to South following his defeat in Middle Egypt. Thebes was sacked and set on fire by the Assyrian soldiery. Ashurbanipal returned laden with booty dragging countless unfortunate prisoners of war.

Egypt was for the moment laid low with her cities ruined and the temples desecrated and stripped of all their splendour and riches. But within a decade Psamatic, who had been appointed viceroy by Ashurbanipal, led a revolt, freed Egypt from the Assyrian yoke and assumed the Double Crown of Egypt as its rightful pharaoh. He was the founder of a new dynasty, the 26th.

Defeats abroad and want of sound finances compelled the Egyptian leaders in politics to reflect on the past. Lack of money did not permit the rulers even to indulge in the usual pastime of building temples. A return to the past and, as such, to a state of speculative inactivity became the norm. It is usual with degenerate nations to seek to revive the dead glory of the bygone ages and thus to cover the inability to improve the immediate present. It was, however, an attempt at a mere artificial revivification of an old Egypt long passed away, and the effect of the renovation was only to intensify the old age of Egypt, who had but painted her wrinkled face
with unreal aids to youth. In fact the revivalist movement which aimed at producing the pre-Empire days had begun during the Ethiopian domination. It started as a fashion of protest against the outmoded and vulgarized culture of the Empire, for the imperial tradition had not, after all, served Egypt who had fallen a prey to the adventures of west Asian militarists. In the bitterness of thraldom the Egyptians turned from the Empire towards the simple old days of the Pyramid-Builders for inspiration. Names and titles of that period returned and were assumed with great patronage and pride, and when Psamatik I regained independence for Egypt this archaistic crusade was even officially adopted by the state. The renovation naturally was not the harbinger of real renaissance but only ushered in a period of empty vaunt. It must, however, be said that this revivalism and more than that, the combining of the crowns certainly brought in a prosperity never known since the days of the 20th Dynasty.

Psamatik I's son Necho (609-593 B.C.) showed some energy in raising the prestige of Egypt by seeking to re-establish her lost empire in western Asia. He pushed his arms across Palestine and seized the whole of Syria. This was effected with the help of the rebel princes of Assyria. But this was the last flicker of a fast dying flame. Soon the Babylonian ruler moved and at Carchemish where the great prince of Babylonia, Nebuchadrezzar, completely routed him disbanding fully the hosts of Necho. The beaten divisions of the Pharaoh fled to Egypt abandoning all the conquests of the last five years. Nebuchadrezzar hotly pursued the beaten army right down to the borders of Egypt and halted only on hearing the death of his father. Necho on his return gave up all hope of regaining land or influence west of the Euphrates and settled down to maturing his plans of internal development the most important of which was to dig a canal for joining the Nile with the Red Sea,
Necho’s successor Psamatik II (593-588 B.C.) was too occupied in Nubia to think of Asia. But his successor mistaking the non-interference of Nebuchadrezzar in western Asia for imbecility, determined to make a bid for empire in Asia. He appeared in Palestine and Phoenicia and captured Sidon and Tyre. Nebuchadrezzar, struck by the insolence of the Pharaoh, moved westward like lightning. While his armies operated in the South, he himself appeared before Ribla but the Pharaoh hastened back to Egypt by sea. Piece by piece the Babylonian conqueror subjugated the Egyptian possessions in Asia. The foreign predilections had made the Egyptian king so hopeful to the people that they were even prepared to dethrone him. The dethronement, however, could not be effected although one of the nobles called Amasis managed to get control over the actual government of the country. The Pharaoh attacked him but was himself defeated and slain and Amasis assumed the royal power. There is evidence to show that Nebuchadrezzar entered Egypt and pushed as far South as the First Cataract.

While Egypt had been endeavouring to assume the rosy colour of youth and put on false pretences of rejuvenation, Babylonia and Persia, and a little earlier Assyria, were exulting in the glory of real youth. After Assyria Chaldaea with her capital at Babylon, and, last of all, Persia made a bid for power in the western world and the glory of the Medes and Persians seemed to have come to stay. This was a new power, the Aryan, appeared on earth which was now successfully combating for hegemony everywhere. In India the Aryans had long closed the urban civilization of Indus Valley and had erected their own rural structure on its debris. In Greece too centuries ago the Achaean Aryans had crushed the Cretan culture and established their own city-states. Last of all came the Medes who established themselves in the high-lands of Iran and from there swooped down the plains of Mesopotamia. This was the Aryan power now rising
to measure swords with the Semitic and Hametic rulers in the western world. The sun of the Semitic and Hametic powers had set and the dawn of the Iranian Aryans was breaking in the east.

When Kurush conquered Babylonia, Amasis the Pharaoh never disputed his claim for he knew too well that Egypt could not possibly resist the nascent Persia. Even otherwise Egypt had become inert. When Kambujiya prepared to put through the Achaemenid plan of conquering Egypt, the latter lay fascinated in a state of coma unable to defend herself and as though waiting to submit to her new master. No resistance whatever was offered except by a few Greek hirelings. A small engagement was fought at Pelusium, when Psamatik III gave battle to the Persian monarch. Some of the Egyptians went over to the Persian side, a great number were massacred and the rest fled with the king to Memphis. Memphis was taken and the deposed Pharaoh was carried to Asia where he was later put to death. Kambujiya never repeated the mistake of the Assyrian conquerors by contumuously declining to accept the Egyptian throne, sceptre and the gods but appropriated them all and became a full-fledged Pharaoh. Kambujiya proceeded next to reduce Nubia and Napata where independent rulers had been ruling ever since Tanutamon had retired from Egypt. The expedition of Kambujiya could not prosper although the Nubian kingdom was considerably shaken by the violent contact. The Persian conquest of Egypt came about in 525 B. C.

Kambujiya hastened home to put down a revolt leaving the charge of Egypt to his Satrap Aryandes. But the king died on the way and Darius ascended the throne of Persia. During the upheaval in Persia the Satrap Aryandes had revolted and assumed the royal dignity. Darius entered Egypt in 517 B. C., and the Satrap submitted at once to his lord. Darius also ascended the Egyptian throne and was accepted like Kambujiya by the conquered people as their
Pharaoh. His rule in Egypt was marked by peaceful activity and important monuments were erected which do credit to his regime. The enlightened Persian rule came to an end following the smash at Issus (333 B.C.) of the host of Darius III by Alexander the Macedonian, when he marched on Egypt in 332 B.C.

Egypt first formed a province of the vast empire of Alexander the Great and later, when the Macedonian conqueror died and his empire was partitioned, the land of the Nile fell to the share of Ptolemy who established an independent Greek kingdom in Egypt. But the Ptolemies were wise enough to become completely Egyptianized except in name. They accepted the religion and social habits of the land, married their own sisters in the Egyptian manner and their names were recorded in the sacred writings within cartouches. In the first century B.C. Egypt passed from the hands of the romantic queen Cleopatra to those of Octavius Caesar and became a province of the Roman Empire. Egypt, who had made history and dictated the destiny of man for well over thirty-five centuries, now ceased to be free.

2. CIVILIZATION

We have already touched in the beginning of this volume upon Egypt’s agriculture and industry, we may relate below the various phases of her ancient culture: her religion and philosophy, her arts and sciences, her literature and education, her social life, her form of government.

Religion and Philosophy

Religion was the most important feature in the life of the Egyptians. It persuaded every pursuit, art, science, letters, government.

Sky was the vault which covered every object below and under this canopy stood goddess Hathor, in the form of the sacred cow. Her belly was studded with stars forming
the firmament and the earth lay under her feet. Like Dyava and Prithivi of the Rigvedic Aryans the sky-god Sibu and the earth-goddess Nait were the progenitors of all things. The moon deity was perhaps worshipped but the sun-god was the greatest of the gods. The moon was sometimes swallowed by the sow and an eclipse was caused. The sun was worshipped in the form of Ra who fertilized the earth, and sailed the sky. He was also venerated in the form of Horus, a hawk, forming the symbol of Egyptian royalty. Ra is the creator of the first man and the first woman and through them all the generations of men.

Egyptians worshipped the plants which were helpful to them in life but more popular were the animal gods. The bull, the cow, the goat, the ram, the dog, the cat, the jackal, the crocodile, the serpent, the hawk, the goose, the swallow, all were objects of veneration in one epoch or another of the Egyptian history. The great gods took the form of one of these animals. They were treated not only with offerings but even their sex was sought to be satisfied with women. At Mendes pretty women had to offer themselves to the divine goat. The bull and the goat were the incarnations of Osiris. Phallic images, representing Osiris played an important part in Egyptian belief.

Human gods appeared late in the Egyptian pantheon and when they did they acted like human beings. They were born in blood and flesh and decayed and died. They hungered and ate, thirsted and drank, loved and mated, hated and killed. Osiris, the god of the Nile, was killed by the wicked god Set, who was banished by Horus, the son of Osiris and Isis, and his mother revived her husband by the warmth of her love. Isis was the great Mother, the sister and wife of Osiris. She produces every living being and nurtures it with her motherly tenderness. She is the source of all fertility. Osiris also ruled over the land of the dead and weighed their merits and sins and rewarded
or punished them. Besides the above and Amen (Amon) and Ptah there were minor divinities also like Anubis, Shu, Tefnut, Nephthys, Ket, Nut. Even Pharaoh was a god and many a strong one got his statue installed in the temples as a divinity.

Priesthood naturally became powerful and the priest's the props of the thrones who could bless or destroy even the pharaohs. They were masters of ritualism and ritual magic and sold merits and amulets for the remission of sins and held the keys to immorality. They sold the charms and prayers which constituted the Book of the Dead preserved with the dead body for its guidance. The Book of the Dead was supposed to have been composed by Thoth, the god of wisdom, himself.

The desire to live beyond death gave rise to the belief that the body was composed of three elements, the corpus, Ka, a tiny replica of the corpus, and the soul which was a bird. It was essential that all the three be kept intact. Ka and the soul depended on the safety or the dissolution of the body. Hence the invention of the preservatives, the erection of the pyramids.

Egyptians were great builders, great conquerors and great artisans and craftsmen. They are not known to have been philosophers although we come across passages in men's utterances which read like philosophical expressions. Those who ignored the present life and made much of the one beyond the present naturally were pessimistic and sad. Their prayers too were not heartening. The most melancholy is a poem incised on a block of stone preserved in the Leyden Museum. It is dated to about 2200 B.C. and part of its is as follows:

None cometh from Thence
That he may tell us how they fare,
That he may content our hearts
Until we too depart
To the place where they have gone.
Celebrate the glad day;
Be not weary therein.
Lo, no man taketh his goods with him.
Yea, none returneth again that is gone thither.
One scroll considers the present life a bondage and death a deliverance:
Death is before me today
As a man longs to see his home
When he had spent years of captivity.

There is a work of philosophy called the ‘Instructions of Ptah-hotep,’ dating back to 2880 B.C. The author, the Governor of Memphis and the Prime Minister to a king, left a manual of eternal wisdom to his son. But instead of speculating on principles of knowledge the manual instructs on the propriety of behaviour.

Akhenaten’s indeed was a doctrine of monotheism butting on the premises of monism and it may well stand the test of elements that constitute philosophy.

But Egypt had her sceptics too, those who questioned the truth of the existence of god or gods. They doubted the usefulness of offerings to problematical divinities.

**Arts and Sciences**

The building of the great pyramids, the temples at Karnak, Abydos and Luxor, of the cities like Thebes and Memphis and the palaces in them and digging of reservoirs and canals for irrigational and commercial purposes, the embalming of the bodies with chemical preservatives, the taking out of decaying material and filling them with pitch by surgical operation would require a fair knowledge of the sciences like engineering, chemistry and surgery.

Architecture and sculpture were very highly developed arts which is proved by monumental pyramids, temples and statuaries. We have already described the
pyramids of Gizah. Besides the pyramids, which required planning by great architects and engineers and mathematicians, there are rock-cut sepulchres finished with ornate carvings and involving enormous labour. Stone for them was brought from distant parts by way of the Nile. Three millennia ranged between the pyramids of Gizah and the temple of Hathor at Denderah during which epoch pharaoh after pharaoh raised monuments and temples for gods, stupendous and noble. Colonnades and colossi were erected in unbroken chains. An architectural jungle was created when the columns of the temples at Karnak, Luxor, Medinet-Habu, Der-el-Bahri and at the Ramesseum were built testifying to the zeal and love for art of pharaohs like Thutmose I and III, Amanhetep III, Seti I, Rameses II and Queen Hatshepsut. The great statues of Rameses, the squatting figure of Scribe in the Louvre, the portraits of Akhenaten, Tutankhamen and numerous queens carved in high and low relief are some of the master pieces in the art of modelling, sculpting and portraying men and their characters. As a rule the statues of kings, standing gigantic or enthroned sitting, are stout while those of the queens and women are supple and delicate. The latter are portrayed generally young which have served as models for young kings like Tutankhamen and Akhenaten. Bas relief represents an art between sculpture and painting and the master-artists of Egypt have filled the space on the temple walls and the wooden works. Men, women, slaves and labourers, nobles and priests all have been drawn and engraved and carved with a genius unprecedented in the foreign world and never excelled or equalled by the posterior generations. The paintings too, done in distemper, are exquisite. The 'Gazelles and Peasants', the 'Cat Watching the Prey', the 'Dancing Girl', the 'Bird Hunt in a boat' take away the breath of the beholder. Planes succeed planes in a panoramic chain and men and women, birds and beasts, reptiles and
plants mingle in paint and relief and present to the eye some of the most splendid lyricism in the world of fine arts. The nudes show the most perfect lineal curvatures and the draped figures bring out the lines so as to do credit to the best masters of the craft. Birds at wings in the void seem to flutter them or appear floating calmly and the reeds produce the effect of swinging in the wind. Water moves in wavy ripples and the fishes dip and dive and the geese and the ducks float without movements. The hieroglyphic writing itself is a kind of painting requiring the brush and colour and a hand deft in delineating rhythmic and lyrical drawing.

The luxuries round which the royal princes, the nobles and the rich lived and moved point to a high state of amenities. Carved and polished furniture, thrones, beds, chairs and tables in wood that have stood the test of millenniums, metallic objects, utensils and receptacles, the rugs and endless objects of use present the picture of a high standard of living for those who were the favourites of fortune.

Sciences too like the arts were a favourite with the Egyptians. As referred to above, the building of the monuments gave them their mathematics and the rise and recession of the Nile their geometry and calendar. In the domain of arithmetic they knew the fractions but not the digits as we know them, nor the zero nor decimal. The numbers they wrote by signs of strokes of one, two, three, etc. until they came to ten for which and for hundred, thousand, etc. there were different signs. Geometry was founded on the plans of the pyramids and on the lines distributing the fields and farms after the floods. Spheres, planes, squares, circles and cylinders were known.

Physics does not seem to have been pursued by the Egyptians but the stargazers had developed some knowledge of the luminaries of the firmament which distinguished the plane’s from the fixed stars. The Egyptians had formed the first calendar of the world by dividing the year into twelve
months, four months forming each season relating to the flood, the sowing and the harvesting of the crops. The length of the year, 365 days coming nearest to ours today, 365 1/4, was one of the wonderful gifts the Egyptians gave us relating to the calendar.

Chemistry showed the Egyptians the way to medicine and the treatment of diseases. The preservative balm of the mummies was one of the wonders of the chemical world, the ingredients of which defied the chemists of the modern age. The most outstanding aspect of the Egyptian science was medicine. It began in the charm and magic of the priests who were also the first physicians of the ancient nations, but later both scientific and unscientific treatises were composed and compiled to treat the diseases, their diagnosis, treatment and cure. Papyrus scrolls as long as fifteen feet are extant which deal extensively with the medical science. Some of these go back to a period as early as 1600 B.C. They mention among other diseases tuberculosis, small-pox, gall-stones, infantile paralysis, anaemia, gout, epilepsy and appendicitis. There were hundreds of remedies besides prescriptions ranging from magical charms to chemical concoctions. The prescriptions detail as remedies “lizard’s blood, swine’s ears and teeth, purred meat and fat, a tortoise’s brains, an old boot boiled in oil, the milk of lying-in woman, the water of a chaste woman, the excreta of men, donkeys, dogs, lions, cats and lice.”

But the most admirable part of this science was surgery. It can be doubted if this science was put to secular use as extensively as it was utilized to religious purposes. Its main use, the knowledge of which has come down to us, was the operation on the dead body which was sent to the table immediately after death. The entrails, the brains, the lungs, indeed all the physical matter which helped in the decomposition of the dead body were taken out and pitch was used to fill the empty space. The operating detail has
already been recorded elsewhere.

God Thoth, the spring of all wisdom and esoteric magic, is said to have composed twenty thousand volumes in course of his rule over the earth for three thousand years to which all sciences owe their origin. The ancient Egyptians date this work of the god creating the sciences to about 1800 years before Christ.

**Literature and Education**

Education created literature and was limited to the priests, sometimes to the royalties and the rich. But its main purpose was to prepare scribes who wrote the manuscript's on papyrus and painted literature in colourful words on the walls of pyramids, temples and columns. The schools were attached to the temples and the first teachers were the priests officiating at the temples like the Roman Catholic churches which employed the clergy to the work of teaching.

Letters or correctly the pictures were formed on potsherds and lime-stone slabs and we have specimens of corrections done on the margins of the slates by the priest-teachers. Learning was not easy and the backs and ears of the pupils told through the patches and colours incidental to the blows and boxing, given by the teachers, how hard was to learn reading and writing.

Great, however, were the efforts made by both the teacher and the taught tracing the pictographic symbols for the alphabet had not yet come into use. The mode of writing is another gift of the Egyptians aided by the Sumerians to the world and it is interesting to find a whole literature representing different aspects incised and painted in beautiful forms and figures. First the writing was done in pictures representing situations; later when ideas, difficult and abstract, came to be represented by pictographic symbols it was called ideographic, from which in course of time, when symbols symbolized sounds, phoneti-
cal syllables developed into alphabetic letters. The first phase was called hieroglyphic, the second corrupting the first by the priests into hasty writing came to be called hieretic and a further corruption of the same was named 'demotic' which endured till as late as the rule of Cleopatra in the 1st century B.C. The Egyptian alphabet is said to have been derived about 2000 B.C.

It was indeed not easy either to depict or decipher literature although the Egyptians did it as naturally as we do our alphabetic writing today. And indeed education or the creating of literature was not wholly confined to the writing for the dead or to the priestly studies. For we find such exhortations as 'give thy heart to learning, and love her like a mother,' 'Behold, there is no profession that is not governed; it is only the learned man who rules himself.' It is declared a capital pleasure 'to turn the heart to books during the daytime and to read during the night,' against the profession of the soldier which is a misfortune and against that of the tiller of the soil which is unrelieved boredom and wearisome.

The resultant literature was both religious and secular, sacred and profane. Religious literature is mostly to be found inscribed on the walls of the five pyramids of the Fifth and Sixth Dynasties and on the inner side of the lid of the coffins. This kind of literature deals with transcendental matter, the gods, the dead and the instructions to the dead. The profane or the secular literature, which has generally come down to us in fragments of papyri, is prolific in fiction, short stories, adventures, tales of love and poems relating to pangs of separation and yearning for the beloved, in tales of lovers pining away in distance. Woman's love for husband's brother, repulsed by him, reporting to the husband of attempted violence, the latter's revenge on the accused, etc. is a story as old as the pyramids. Short stories, relating to the common folks mixed with magic and uncommon circumstances are depicted galore on papyri. The most outstand-
ing story, supposed to be true and coming from the third or the early second millennium B.C., is one related by a shipwrecked sailor which is both graphic and horripilating. This Egyptian Sinbad the Sailor sailing on the high seas with 120 picked companions in a boat 180 ft. long and 60 ft. broad was wrecked and he found shelter on an island to which the waves tossed him. He is rescued and tells his own story with the preface: How happy it makes one to relate the story of his own experience when the calamity has passed away.

An autobiographical adventurous tale is told by Sinuhe, a noble man who had fled from Egypt after the death of Amenemhet I and roams the countries of the Near East and yearns to find asylum in the land of his birth and favour with the new pharaoh and longs to lie after death under the Egyptian earth. He returns, is treated well by the sovereign and his wishes are fulfilled.

A man—he is supposed to tell what he saw—seems to have watched a goddess while bathing but he turns down the suggestions and advances of the bathing beauty. He relates his vision thus:

"Behold ye, when I went down to the swamp...I saw a woman therein, and she looked not like a mortal being. My hair stood on end when I saw her tresses, because her colour was so bright. Never will I do what she said; awe of her is in my body."

A woman expresses her feelings of love for a man in ardent words. She is, however, a sister, but sisters generally married their brothers:

I am thy first sister,
And thou art to me as a garden
Which I have planted with flowers
And all sweet-smelling herbs.
I directed a canal into it,
That thou mightest dip thy hand into it
When the north wind blows cool.
The beautiful place where we take a walk,  
When thy hand rests within mine,  
With thoughtful mind and joyous heart  
Because we walk together.  
It is intoxicating to me to hear thy voice,  
And my life depends upon hearing thee.

Pornographic literature, written on papyrus, was deposited with the dead to amuse him in his doneliness.

The Egyptian *lettre polite* has no drama or epic but the secular literature has a store of historical narratives, magic formulas, devotional songs, poems of love and war, letters personal and commercial. Historical literature abounds in the records. Every pharaoh was attended in his court by a chronicler whom he took along when he marched on an expedition and caused him to record all that he saw and all that would add to the king's glory that may not have happened and may have been only imagined. A regular jungle of chronicled facts and narratives exists in the rescued records.

The writings of the ancient Egyptians had been preserved in a library whose keeper was called the 'Scribe of the House of Books.' The way to preserve the documents was to put the rolls of the papyri inside jars, label them and arrange them on shelves. Such libraries go back to as early as 2000 B.C. In fact literature of all kinds had become such a huge pile that a scholar of 2150 B.C. deplored that nothing remained new to be said or narrated either in language or in thought.

**Social Life**

The basic unit of life in ancient Egypt was the family. Mother and wife were supreme in the household and a kind of matriarchal mode of living prevailed across the millennia except during the occupation of the land by the Hyksos aliens when a touch of the patriarchate governed
the courtly orders. Property devolved and inheritance passed from the mother to the daughter.

It is in order to save this inheritance, the family property, that the brother married his sister. The people did not want to share their estate with a foreigner, a brother-in-law from a different family. It is because of this reason that the kings of Egypt came to marry their sister, sometimes all their sisters, occasionally the daughter or all the daughters. They shared the throne with their sister-wives. We, who are accustomed today to the patriarchal way of living and to marrying out of the family and have come to favour exogamy, may find it difficult to imagine that love of a brother for his sister or of a sister for her brother in a sexually passionate way could be natural or normal. But the natural and normal rest on a solidified rock of habits; custom sways the minds and establishes the morals.

Brothers and sisters grew up together in love which matured in passion's intensity when they matured in body and mind. And since the brother knew that the estate of the mother and the family would devolve on his sister he became all the more solicitous of her favour. It was the sister, the woman, who gave the dates and sought assignations from her loving brother or man. She it was that made overtures, took liberties, wrote poems and even proposed to him to be her husband. The sister-brother marriages became so common that in the second century after Christ, it is said that, about two-thirds of the whole population of Arsinoe married in that manner. Among the kings of Egypt the custom had become so imperative that her Assyrian and Persian conquerors mostly failed because they could not conform to this powerful local custom and the Greek Ptolemies succeeded mostly because they adopted the Egyptian ways, chiefly the mode of marrying their own sisters.

Woman in ancient Egypt was completely free and went about in the streets to pursue her affairs unescorted unharmed.
She ate and drank in the open with men, lorded her estates and bequeathed them in her own right to whomever she pleased. She was the mistress of her home so that to most historians her husband has appeared henpecked. No woman in history has occupied such a high status at home and in society as did the Egyptian dame. Only the Rigvedic came nearest to her but, after all, the former was no better than the shadow of her husband. The Greek free women were a sorry lot for they were rigidly confined within the walls of their house. One of the characters of Menander says that the best wife is one who never peeps out of the house window; that a good wife is like a good coin which people hoard underground while a bad one is like the bad coin which circulates in the market. In Greece it was the hetairai the prostitutes, who kept company of the free men and the great and afforded them both the pleasures of the sex and the food of the mind. Aspasia, the harlot and the keep of Pericles, whetted the reason of the former and of Socrates and sat between the two to watch the plays when Aristophanes mocked the philosopher.

The Egyptians too lightened their hours by consorting to courtesans and dancing girls whose pictures we find painted in portrayals. Diadorus Sacculus writes that sometimes the beautiful daughters of noblemen were given over to the public and they became public women in the manner of the prettiest woman among the Lichhavis who was made over to the people to serve as the beloved of all. One such was Amrapali. One such again was in Egypt who from her savings built a pyramid and later married and mixed in society. Most priestesses or the concubines of the gods served them or their priests while young and attractive and married when their charms withered. No stigma attached to them or to the men they mated.

Kings supported huge harems of wives, composed of sisters, occasionally daughters, and step-mothers fallen to
their inheritance, the daughters of their nobles and those of foreign potentates who brought hundreds of maids to serve as concubines besides others. The nobles mimicked the way of their masters in the sphere of marriage but naturally limited the number of their wives to the extent of their power to feed them. The common man practised monogamy, loved his wife, was ruled by her and left all his possessions to her.

From the portrayal of the kings one would infer that they were stoutly built. In their comparison the common folk look rather weak. But they were by no means weak as they conquered the hardy peoples of the north, the Indo-European Hittites and the Mitannis and the tall and energetic Assyrians. From the paintings and reliefs they look muscular, broad-shouldered, thin-waisted and full-lipped. Their nose was straight and they had big and pretty eyes. Men are painted red and women yellow. They shaved their head in order to wear wigs. The wigs of the kings were the biggest.

Men and women normally wore a loin-cloth under the old kingdom but when wealth grew women added a covering for the breast region. Sometimes a loose robe covered the upper part and was clasped under the right breast. Children went naked but for their ear-rings and necklaces. Both men and women were fond of ornaments and jewellery. Neck, breasts, arms, wrists and ankles all were decked with ornaments. Rings and chains were favourites.

Cosmetics were freely used and the Egyptian women had greater varieties of objects of decoration in their toilet-case than the modern ones have. They rouged their faces, painted their lips, coloured their nails, oiled their hair, and anointed their limbs. They painted their eyes and their eye-brows with kohl, also used today by women. The Arabs called it al-kohl which gave the word alcohol. Numerous items of decoratives and cosmetics have been
found with the remains of feminine bodies, for example, mirrors, razors, hair-curlers, hair-pins, combs, cosmetic boxes, also dishes and spoons—made of wood, ivory, alabaster or bronze.

For diversion people played with checkers and dice, held wrestling contests and bull-fights. While feasting on meats and vegetables, honey and wines the rich were attended upon by slaves. Children played with marbles, balls, dolls tops and toys. Singing and dancing had become professional pursuits for they were fairly much in demand. Numerous stringed instruments, flutes and lyres have been found portrayed in the reliefs and paintings. Despite their solemnity, the Egyptians were a gay people.

Administration

The king, called Pharaoh, was the head of the state and government, who ruled from his palace, the 'Great House' (Pero in Egyptian, translated Pharaon by the Jews). He was also the last court of appeal. Assisted by the priests and his Prime Minister he ruled the state autocratically. He traced divine origin for himself and many a time his statute was installed in temples. He was attended by generals and high officials and he led his forces in person on expeditions and was received by his feudal lords with costly presents when he visited their estates. He had a Council of Elders, Saru, to help him in his administration.

He had a number of high officials of whom twenty took care only of his toilet. One such officer is described in an inscription as “Overseer of the Cosmetic Box, Overseer of the Cosmetic Pencil, Sandal-Bearer to the king, doing in the matter of the King’s sandals to the satisfaction of his law.”

The Prime Minister was the head of the administration, acting under the King’s instructions, chief justice and head of treasury, hearing petition and deciding cases ac-
cording to the honest needs of justice and law. Criminal law was harsh. Torture was used to ascertain truth. Among the numerous punishments ranged beating with a rod, cutting the limbs, exiling to the mines, capital punishment by beheading, standing, impaling or burning at the stake. Extreme penalty was administered by embalming the body with chemicals which slowly and painfully corroded the limbs. High personages were permitted to die by killing themselves. There was no police but the state was peacefully governed. There were regular provincial courts of justice established at Memphis, Thebes and Heliopolis. The scribes realized the income-tax and deposited it in the treasury. They also took the census. The system continued till the Roman rule and the parents of Christ had to journey from Nazareth to Egypt for census when Jesus was born on the way at Bethlehem.

Now we may sum up the foregoing as follows. The Egyptian civilization was one of the earliest human achievements. The first beginnings arose during the Neolithic period when Egypt was passing out of barbarism into civilization. Like all Neolithic peoples Egyptians too began to cover the marches of civilization through handicrafts. Pottery fashioned by hand and coloured was frequently of the most exquisite form. Reed mats were planted and coarse cloth was woven, while the flint implements had no parallel on finish anywhere.

But it is not this aspect of Egypt's civilization which arrests the notice of the historian. It is indeed the outlook on life which shaped most of the peculiar trends of the culture of the Nile. This outlook was rather gloomy and was responsible for all the countless necropoles and imposing pyramids. Take away the pyramids from the count and much of what remains will cease to be of effective interest. The pyramids are the key to the dark mysteries of that land for they contained within them besides the untold riches of millenniums the embalmed mummies and the hierogy-
phies, both remarkable achievements of antiquity and both incidents of the ingenuity and power of priestcraft.

The pyramids are imposing structures. Nothing more imposing in antiquity or since is known. They are peculiar to the land of the Nile for they are not temples, not mere tombs either. Tombs of Ur too have attracted interest but they lack the architectural marvel of the Egyptian superstructure and the preservatory chemicals that gave such endless life to dead bodies in Egypt. Nor can the Ziggurats—temple structures of solid masonry—of Babylonia compare with the pyramids with their secluded chambers. Egypt does not lack in temples. They are galore and indeed unparalleled specimens of that kind which were erected with such devotion, zeal and fortitude and were endowed with such lavish wealth by generations of kings which again meant such power for the Pharaoh and his priests.

The pyramids bring to our knowledge the very details of life along the banks of the Nile, human glory and misery, love and hatred, legend and history, sciences and arts. They are symbolic of the Lower World, the abode of the dead, where god Osiris held his dismal charge rewarding the souls or condemning them according to their deserts. But souls could not be admitted to the shades unless their erstwhile bodies, their temporal abode in this world have been secured against decay. Without them the souls would wander beyond rest and have no peace. The longer the corpses stay undamaged the surer would the comfort of the souls be. And so human genius racked its brain and strove to explore the objects and the elements around it and beyond the reach of its eye and ultimately accomplished the unimaginable. Man discovered the preservative chemicals, the magic balm, that would secure the dead body against decay for thousands and thousands of years. Mummies are known as old as eight thousand years, not
preserved under the unassailable vaults of the pyramids but in ordinary stone cases buried under common earth.

How was it done? Nobody can properly tell and yet the guesses have not been unfruitful. As soon as man was dead his body was attended by a surgeon and priest, both being the same individual, and by an assistant to aid the operation. By a bold incision the rotting properties within the chest and the intestines were taken out and the inside was re-filled with cedar-tree pitch and myrrh and cassia. Then for a period of ten weeks the body was soaked in a solution of natron brought from the desert of Libya. Now the mummy was ready to be wrapped in yards and yards of linen, to be placed in a pretty painted wooden coffin (which was of gold in cases of the kings or the rich), and finally to be removed to its final rest in the western desert, among the necropoles of the western hills or in the chamber of a mighty pyramid. It was called a mummy because it was filled with 'mumia' or pitch. The soul 'went west', for that was the abode of the dead.

The assistant who made the operation was the lowest of the lowly for no common man in Egypt would accept to do violence to a dead body. And he was chosen with care for the responsibility was great. It was found that to some the dead flesh was no less alluring than that alive, and many a time a wretch succumbed to hateful carnality and attempted to violate the body of an attractive girl which had been delivered to his charge for the process of embalming. The practice of leaving the body to such indiscriminate care was discontinued by a royal decree.

The journey of the soul was long and the repose of the body indeed eternal and interminable. The body had to be provided with all the amenities that contemporaneous civilization could afford. All kinds of eatables were interred along with the coffin in the royal chamber of the pyramid and stone effigies of officials and servants, symbolic of the living.
were placed by the dead. Furniture of an exceptionally brilliant kind was stored along with innumerable other items of the human menu and attire. The array of these effects was so alluring that it is no wonder that it incited theft and burglary and there are numerous incidents on record describing how robbers broke into the scheduled chamber and carried the mass of golden riches so lavishly stored there. In order to prevent this kind of robbery in antiquity or rather to save the royal mummies from desecration they were removed many a time to convenient necropoles where they could be better guarded. Sometimes we read of most ingenious measures taken to make the mummies immune from the cupidity of man, the most important of these being, for instance, the deceitful labelling of names thus sending the desecrators on the wrong scent. These tombs disclose the wealth in gold and silver which the pharaohs amassed through their military exploits abroad and internal exactions at home. The temples and the pyramids were the chief favourites of this hoarded wealth. The coffin of Tutenkhamen can be instanced as a case in point. Besides a coffin of solid gold, the inner chamber, containing the coffin had walls plated with thick sheets of gold that struck the explorers dumb.

The temples at Memphis, Thebes, Karnak, Luxor and at numerous other sites leave the visitor gaping at their size, glory and architectonic temper. Whereas the pyramids are solid masses of masonry, stupendous delights of their builders, the temples are ornate structures giving us glimpses into the distant past where little man set against the forces of nature could achieve as much. The walls of the pyramids as also those of the temples bear records for the benefit of the posterity and while the former relate the deeds of the dead the latter recount the exploits of the living.

This brings us to the sacred writings, called hieroglyphics technically, which were, besides the discovery of the preservatory chemicals, the other wonder of that ancient
world. Coeval with the most ancient writings of India, China and Sumer, perhaps even anterior to them all in point of time, the art of writing was probably the discovery of the man of the Nile valley. What riches, what endless details, of life lived, of powers shattered, of gains stolen and of life yoked to efforts do these undecaying undying pictures on walls present! For thirty centuries the secret of writing went on concentrating power in the priest, the most tormenting intermediary between the alive and the dead. The human was so very small and the divine so extremely severe that the interceding priest naturally came to be looked upon as a saviour. For long periods of time he kept the secret of writing, indeed of power, to himself until the same reached the form what the Egyptologists call the Demotic in which most of the later records are inscribed. In course of time when trade by land and commerce by sea, and, even more than these, human affairs on the affectionate and romantic side developed, the art of writing was shared by the more fortunate of the lay men. Such records and those others depicting incidents of diplomatic relations and genealogical tables of the various Dynasties are preserved on strips of papyrus reed, the earliest paper utilized by man.

The gods of the Egyptian world like any other, save the Palestinian, were numerous. Each village and locality had its tutelary deity. The earliest perhaps were the spirits in the trees and in the stones and the Nile, and those who were partly human, partly animal. The most important was, of course, Osiris, the god of the Lower World. His wife was Isis and his son Horus, the sun-god with falcon; and another sun-god was Ra, perhaps a divinity introduced from the Semitic world into the Egyptian pantheon. Ptah, the "Opener", was another such foreign entity that added to the crowd of gods of Egypt. Set was an evil sacred animal-god. Amen, first the patron god of the kings of Thebes later became the king of gods, and great temples
were dedicated to him at Karnak. Akhenaten suppressing the worship of numerous gods, established that of one god—
Aten, the sun-disk. For the first time in history was the
oneness of God realized. The idea was much in advance
of the age and was suppressed. Hathor was perhaps the
most important goddess with the head of an ass. To these
the pharaoh added his own weight by installing his images
in temples and getting them worshipped after his death.

The yield in grains from the land was considerable look-
ing to the narrow strip of the land. Two crops were harv-
ested, one after another, after the flood of the river had
receded enriching the soil with inches of fertile mud. A
system of canals for irrigation also came incidentally to be
maintained. Incidentally again the science of Geometry
developed from an attempt at keeping and re-marking the
boundaries of the holdings in land. The floods again in-
directly became the cause of maintaining a calendar, perhaps
the earliest in history.

But how did the people themselves live—those builders
of the great pyramids who brought tons of weight of stone
from the western mountains and lifted thousands of tons of
weight on their bare bones aloft into the sky, raised the
crops, fought and won battles for their kings, braved the
dangers of the sea and the desert to acquire gold for their
lord? They were paupers amidst plenty. They rose as
the streak of red appeared on the horizon of the desert and
went out to till their fields and went to bed as the light died
behind the western hills. Between the twilights they toiled
and plodded across the day without hope or fulfilment, with-
out chances of recompense and died as uncared as they
had lived. The pictures of man that have been preserved
in the hieroglyphics give him a bare strip of cloth across the
loin which is certainly not much for one who worked the
elements and raised the wealth of the land. Osiris was as
severe with him after death as Horus had been in life, for
his journey across the gloom was gloomier still in the absence of the funerary articles so abjectly denied while living.

3. THE DISCOVERY OF EGYPT

Such a remarkable civilization lay buried under sand until dug out by the patient labour of the archaeologists after 1798, when Napoleon led his forces there. He had taken with him a number of engineers and scholars who discovered by chance at the Rosetta mouth of the Nile the famous ‘Rosetta Stone’ which turned out to be the key to decipherment of the hieroglyphic writing of the pyramids.

Champollion Jean-Francois, a genius, who, when he had gone to take his admission at the lycee of Grenoble had been directly appointed a professor in his teens, undertook to decipher the defying script. Working hard and patiently for years on a basilisk, he guessed that the pictographic letters within a cartouche and repeated several times must be representing proper names; he read them ‘Polemy’ and ‘Cleopatra’. Thus deciphering ten letters, he also established that the mode of writing had an alphabet. The Rosetta Stone perfected his reading, for it was inscribed in three scripts, the hieroglyphic, demotic and Greek, and after twenty years of further labour Champollion opened the secret of the Egyptian writing. British scholars too reached the same conclusion, working independently, and the enormous extent of inscriptions were readily deciphered and Egypt lay revealed to us.

Egypt, that had ushered in the dawn of civilization, had ruled the greater part of the ancient world and had slumbered for centuries, opened her treasure of knowledge to the historian and he learnt how deeply that strip of sand had influenced human history. “The improvement of agriculture,” says Will Durant, “metallurgy, industry and engineering; the apparent invention of glass and linen, of paper and ink
of the calendar and the clock, of geometry and the alphabet, the refinement of dress and ornament, of furniture and dwelling, of society and life, the remarkable development of orderly and peaceful government, of census and post, of primary and secondary education, even of technical training for office and administration; the advancement of writing and literature, of science and medicine; the first clear formulation known to us of individual and public conscience, the first monotheism, the first essays in moral philosophy; the first cry of social justice, the first widespread monogamy, the elevation of architecture, sculpture and the minor arts to a degree of excellence and power never (so far as we know) reached before, and seldom equalled since: these contributions were not lost, even when the finest exemplars were buried under the desert, or overthrown by some convulsion of the globe. Through the Phoenicians, the Syrians and the Jews, through the Cretans, the Greeks and the Romans, the civilization of Egypt passed down to become part of the cultural heritage of mankind."
CHAPTER II

MESOPOTAMIA

1. SUMER

Geography

Mesopotamia is the 'land lying between the two rivers', Euphrates and Tigris. It is now wholly covered by the kingdom of el-Iraq. We can divide this country into two parts, the lower South and the upper North. Roughly the lower South would be Babylonia (the plain of Shinar) and the upper North the uplands of Assyria lying mostly to the east of the Tigris.

Above the combined courses of the Euphrates and Bhatt-el-Hayy (the Snake River), an arm of the Tigris, Babylonia proper begins. To the south-west of this dead-flat alluvial plain lies the Arabian Desert and to the north-east the mountain-barrier. Except for a little gypsum near the Persian Gulf, the plain is completely devoid of stone; there is not a pebble on its face. Between the rivers, along their courses and where canals have been dug from them the soil is exceedingly fertile. Its summer and winter crops of wheat, corn, barley, spelt and sesame are plenty. But in summer the south wind is scorching, although it is not without advantages for it ripens the dates. Beyond the reach of the rivers and their canals the land is drab covered with yellow-gray sand over which the mirage dances and
blazes. Beyond the crops every other necessity of life was imported by the ancient Babylonians. They got, for example, their stone from Assyria and Arabia, their timber from Lebanon and the Amanas, their gold, silver and lead from Asia Minor and their copper from Arabia and Persia.

Above Baghdad the rocky uplands begin. East of the Tigris stretches Assyria right up to the spurs of the mountains of Kurdistan. Four rivers water the land of Assyria and make it one of the pleasantest countries in the world. Wheat and barley grow in abundance and grapes, olives and apricots are in plenty. In the absence of extreme heat dates cannot be grown. The climate in general is Mediterranean.

The Sumerians

The main Semitic empires arose in Mesopotamia between the two waters. The Babylonians and the Assyrians both were builders of empires. But what may seem strange is the fact that their Semitic culture grew out of non-Semitic foundations. The earliest civilized inhabitants of southern Babylonia were the Sumerians, a non-Semitic people. To their habitat they gave the name of Sumer. The Sumerians invented the cuneiform script which was universally used by the Semite Babylonians and Assyrians and by the Aryan Hittites and Mitannis and many others. The language, however, could not remain the same and developed into an agglutinative tongue.

The Sumerians, however, were not the original settlers of the land but were new-comers during those remote and indistinct centuries. It is because of this that their gods bear Semitic looks incidental to the local influence. We are not aware of the stages of development of their civilization for when we first hear of them in the fourth millennium B.C., they are in a state of Minerva born in panoply, already settled in populous cities under a highly organized government. They use metals and a complicated system of writing.
Their culture and non-Semitic nationality extended to the east over Elam. We are not sure if the Elamites also were Sumerian but they were non-Semitic without doubt. Differing completely in their ethnic type and language from the Semites, Aryans, or others, Sumerians resembled the Dravidians most in both. A cognate culture flourished contemporaneously in the Indus Valley. Seals originating from that site or at least imitated from Indian motifs have been found in one of the layers of the Sumerian civilization and it is argued that some people migrated from the original habitat either way through Baluchistan and Southern Persia. It may be pointed out that both in Baluchistan and Southern Persia the Dravidian type has been noted. In Baluchistan there is even today a patch of population speaking Brahui, a Dravidian dialect. The Brahuis may be the descendants of the remnants of those that marched through that land. There is one difficulty in accepting this view for in that case the Sumerian script should have some affinity with the writing on the seals of Mohenjo-daro and Harappa and should even give some clue to the latter's decipherment which has baffled all attempts so far. Besides, it can be said that the two scripts look so different and that the Indian writing has the appearance of a picture script, although it may equally be argued that it is possible that the Sumerian writing too originally may have been pictographic but in course of time it developed into the ideographic form and the exigency of the clime and the materials of writing used changed it to the 'cuneiform' owing to its being written with a square-ended stylus on soft clay.

Other alternative theories suggested would make Sumerians residents of the Caspian Coast or of Iran. There is no doubt about the fact that their language resembles Turkish in many incidents of construction. This view would give them a Mongolian origin and trace their language to the Mongolian group of languages. Their original habi-
tat has been sought even in the Caucasus or Armenia, Susa (Elam) and Egypt with the cultures of all of which the Sumerian civilization is shown to have had affinities. The problem of the origin of the Sumerians must as a matter of fact remain undecided for the moment for want of conclusive evidence. We cannot at this stage again decide whether the cities of southern Babylonia were built by the Sumerians themselves or by their Neolithic predecessors. We must not forget, however, that in northern Babylonia too cities existed simultaneously with those of southern Babylonia. It is usually believed that the Sumerians were the city builders and the Semites of the north also had with their help covered the stages of civilization and built their own cities.

If we may judge from the extant statues, the Sumerians were men of middle height more tending towards the short and stocky. They bore a straight nose and down-stopping eyes. Their build was rather heavy as suggested mainly by the sitting statute of their king Gudea preserved in the Louvre Museum.

The civilization of Sumeria was originally of the urban type and the monumental finds in the excavations disclose the existence at that early age of a number of cities in Sumeria, both in the south and the north. Ur was the most important of them. Eridu, Uruk, Nippur, and Shuruppak were other Sumerian settlements. The cities were generally warring among themselves. We are not sure whether the Sumerian cities ever combined together against the Semitic cities of the north under one king. Perhaps they did some times. We do read in Sumerian legends of very ancient semi-divine rulers of ancient Babylonia to whom fabulously long years of reign have been ascribed.

The Deluge

A most important legend coming from the Sumerian
times relates the story of the Deluge which has formed part of the mythological traditions of almost all the ancient peoples of the world. The Deluge covered perhaps the whole of Babylonia reaching as far as the highlands of the North. The recent excavations have uncovered traces of an extensive flood and rushing water over a vast area of the region. Although it may not be sane to look for the Noah's Ark on the uplands of Armenia and Assyria, perhaps it will not be credulous to accept the authenticity of the legend. After all, the tradition was so powerful as to find its way to the mass of legends of all ancient peoples and has indeed to be looked somewhere for its origin. The greatest possibility for the occurrence of the Deluge is in this region as indicated by the excavations. Dr. Leonard Woolley of the University of Pennsylvania excavating the mounds of Ur dug out in 1929 an eight-foot layer of silt and clay deep below the inhabited soil and scholars have come to believe that this deposit of silt was the result of a devastating flood of the Euphrates caused by an overflow of the Persian Gulf. Dr. Woolley discovered below that layer of silt the remains of a prediluvian culture. The Indian version of the story is related in the Satapatha Brahmana which cannot be placed anterior to the 8th century B.C. which is far later than either the occurrence of the Deluge itself, sometime about 3200 B.C., or than the first reference to it by Nur-Ninsubur in about the year 1984 B.C.

In that case the recording of the Indian version would fall about twenty-five centuries later which means that it has been lifted from an alien source. This view finds further support from the fact that when closing the narration Manu wishes to perform a thanks-giving sacrifice, he asks for an Assyrian priest (Asura-Brahmana) to officiate at the rites. A like incident of importing a class of priests from abroad is related in the Puranas. When Samba, the son of Krishna, after building a temple of Surya was at a loss to
find proper priests to instal the image, the sun-worship hav- ing been lately introduced in India, he had to invite a band of Maga (Saka) priests from Iran who were conversant with that occupation since the worship of that luminary was current in their country. Certainly this points to the source from where the story was lifted or received. It is interesting that the Sumerian document relating the great event was preserved in the Assyrian cuneiform in the library of the great Assyrian emperor Ashurbanipal. Without doubt the narrator of the Brahmana could not have had the chance of deriving his knowledge of the event from the Sumerian source but he could well have done it from the Assyrian with which he was contemporaneous. It will not be out of place here to give the Sumerian version of the legend.

Shuruppak, one of the cities of ancient Babylonia, was the traditional home of Ziusuddu, the Babylonian Noah, who, with his family, was alone supposed to have survived its destruction by water. The Sumerians believed that the Flood came just before the beginning of written history and did damage over an enormous area and, in particular, destroyed Shuruppak. The Flood which damaged both Uruk and Shuruppak occurred at the end of the Jemdet-Nasr period and may have been the catastrophe referred to in the following account supposed to have been given to one of his descendants, Gilgamesh, by Ziusuddu himself.

"I open unto thee a secret matter, and unto thee even will reveal counsels of the gods. Shuruppak, a city which thyself knowest, which is set on the bank of Euphrates—that city was waxed old; and the gods within it, great gods— their heart moved them to bring about a deluge...."

The Brighteyed Lord, the god Enki, was in converse with them, but he repeated their words, to a reed-hunt: "Reed-hut, reed-hut! Wall, wall; Hear, O reed-hut! Con- sider, O wall!"

"Man of Shuruppak, son of Ubardudu, pull down the
house, fashion a boat, abandon goods, seek after life! Hate property and save life alive! Bring up all seed of life into the midst of the boat."

Ziusuddu obeyed, built his ark and entered it with his family taking all seed of life, and set the boat afloat. In the meanwhile a terrible storm broke out and the terrified people saw among the dark clouds the gods themselves brandishing torches.

"Brother could not distinguish his brother. Folk could not be seen from the heavens. The very gods feared the deluge. They scurried away. They went up to the heaven of the god An. The gods were cowering like dogs, huddling together on the threshold. The goddess Inanna cried like a woman in labour. Sweet of voice grieved the lady of the gods: 'Let the day turn to clay because I spoke evil in the assembly of gods! How did I speak evil in the assembly of gods, commanded a hurls-burly for the destruction of my folk! Do I then give birth to my own folk, that as the spawn of fish they should fill the sea?'"

Six days and seven nights followed, bitter nights and bitter days. The storm raged and waters heaved and boil-ed, and Ziusuddu, afloat on the waters, wept bitterly over the destruction of the race. Everything lay under the rushing torrents except the mountain peaks on one of which the ark finally grounded. The hero goes on narrating his tale of woe:

"At the seventh day's coming I brought out and released a dove. The dove went off. She wandered about but alighting place there was none and she returned. I brought out and released a raven. The raven went off and saw the abatement of the waters. She fed wading and dab-bing; did not return. I brought out and sacrificed a sacrifice upto the four winds. I made a drink-offering on the high-place of the mountain; set forth seven and seven flagons; strewed below them cane, cedar and myrtle. The gods snuffed the sav-
our, the gods snuffed the sweet savour! The gods gathered to-
gether like flies about the master of the sacrifice! At last the
Divine Lady (i.e. Inanna), at her coming, lifted up the great
necklace that the god An had made according to her desire.
‘Ye, the gods, even as I forget not the sapphires of my neck,
so indeed will I remember these days and not forget them
for ever. Let the gods come to the sacrifice; but let not
Enlil come to the sacrifice because he would not be advised,
but brought about the deluge and numbered my folk for
destruction.’ At last the god Enlil, at his coming, beheld
the ship. Enlil was angry.” He got into a frenzy over the
escape of a mortal while Enki tried to reason with him thus:

“Thou chief of gods, thou champion, why, wouldst thou
not be advised but wouldst bring about a deluge? On the
sinner lay his sin, on the trespasser lay his trespass! Be
merciful, that he be not utterly cut off, clement that he be
not altogether confounded. Rather than that thou shouldst
bring about a deluge, let a lion come and diminish the folk.
Rather than that thou shouldst bring about a deluge, let a
hyena come and diminish the folk . . .”

The pleadings of Enki bore fruit and god Enlil saw
reason and calmed down. Ziusuddu narrates:

“Enlil came up to the midst of the ship. He took my
hand and brought me out, me even. He brought out my
wife and caused her to kneel beside me. He touched our
foreheads and, standing between us, blessed us: ‘Formerly,
Ziusuddu was human. But now, Ziusuddu and his wife
shall assuredly be like unto us gods. Ziusuddu and his wife
shall dwell afar at the mouth of the Rivers.’”

This version is made out from the Babylonian record
incised on thirty bricks, recovered first twelve and then
eighteen, from Nineveh. The bricks are now deposited in
the British Museum. Another set of them, bought from a
Russian nobleman, is preserved in the Hermitage Museum
of Leningrad. The hero of the Sumerian original of the
subsequent Babylonian version of the epic *Gilgamesh* was Shamash Napishtum.

The Flood which destroyed Uruk and Shuruppak about 3200 B.C. represents the end of the Jemdet-Nasr period. It is important that at the two cities the last remains of that period are separated from those of the following historical period by a silt deposit, nearly eight feet thick at Uruk, which undoubtedly warrants the consequences of a deluge.

**The Cities**

The most outstanding cities of Sumeria were Eridu (Abu Shahrein), Ur (Muqayyar), Uruk (Warka, Biblical Erech), Larsa (Senkereh, Biblical Ellasar), Lagash (Shippurla), Nippur (Niffer) and Nisin. Some of the Babylonian cities and rulers were contemporaneous.

A tablet unearthed at Ur gives a few generations of a pre-diluvian ruling dynasty of whom two names, Elulu and Belulu are interesting. They find mention in the form of Aligi and Biligi in a *mantra*, dealing with a piece of sorcery and used to undo the effect of a snake-bite in the *Atharvaveda* (repeated from the *Rigveda* of the Vedic Aryans), as father and mother of the snake. They also seem to be the base from which the Arabic words Alay-Balay for devils or unwanted spirits or refuse have been formed. Alay-Balay or Alaiya-Balaiya are used in that sense in Persia and north India as familiar household expressions.

The priest historians of Sumer extend the rule of the dynasties before the Deluge to 432,000 years. In the Babylonian version Tammuz and Gilgamesh too have been counted among the early kings. From the silt and layer study of the ruins of the city of Nippur its earliest history would go back to a period as early as 5262 B.C. Dynasties at Kish and Ur flourished respectively about 4500 B.C. and 3500 B.C. The Great Flood is supposed to have occurred about 3200 B.C. or in any case before 3000 B.C. and
from the latter date the priests have almost uninterrupted records of the exploits of kings.

One of the Sumerian legends refers to an early king who is said to have reigned from Kuth over the entire country. It says that the land was overrun by a strange people bearing bodies of birds and faces of ravens. They came from the northern mountains. For three years their raids continued, in the fourth they were routed by the king.

The most outstanding legend of the times is contained in the famous Epic of Gilgamesh. Perhaps it is the earliest known book of the ancient world. It records the exploits of a very early king, Gilgamesh (a descendant of Ziusuddu to whom the latter had narrated the woeful tale of the Deluge), of Uruk (Erech). During his time, it is told in the legend, Uruk was besieged for three years and was reduced to terrible straits although it is not clear whether Gilgamesh himself was the besieged or the liberator. Later he ruled like a tyrant and the gods had to send Enki-du, half beast, half man, to destroy him. Enki-du was, however, captivated by the wiles of a woman who took him to the court where he made friends with Gilgamesh. Both together are related to have performed deeds of valour and to have taken out an expedition against a demon whom they destroyed and whose castle they took. The stories preserve the independent state of the cities.

Every city had its own god whose high-priest was called Patesi. Patesi was the vicegerent of the gods on earth and ruled the city. Sometimes when several cities were subjugated and brought under a single government, the victorious Patesi took the title of Lugal which meant a king.

The most ancient dynasty of the Sumerians ruled at Ur, the famous 'Ur of the Chaldees'. One of its kings was A-anni-padda whose monuments have been brought to light by recent excavations. Utug was the king of Kish. Kings of Kish after Utug were Semites. The last of the Semites
of Kish was subdued by Enshakushanna, a Sumerian king of Uruk. Soon Uruk and Ur both came to be ruled by the same Sumerian king. Another Sumerian ruler was Lugal-da-lu of Adab whose statue has been found. Opis was another city where a Summerian dynasty ruled. The city which rose to incomparable importance was Lagash where Ur-nina ruled. Ur-nina dug canals, and built granaries and store-houses. Statues of this king, of his son and wife, and of his gods have been unearthed. Some of the most ancient relics of Sumerian art like the copper lions and bulls and gold weapons and ornaments of Ur come from this period and date from the time of A-anni-padda.

Eannadu, the grandson of king Ur-nina, conquered Umma and Kish. It was about this time that Lagash defeated Opis. A remarkable stele of Eannadu brings out in a splendid manner his war and conquest of the cities. The monument is popularly called the Vulture-Steke and bears an inscription to that effect. The war evidently had been severe and bloody. Battle-axes are much in evidence with body-armour, solid phalanxes of six men in a row. Soldiers put on rectangular bucklers, reaching their feet and stood in the front behind whom were those in the rear who used their long spears with great effect. Eannadu carried his victorious arms to Elam where he inflicted a great slaughter on the enemy's forces. Uruk and Ur also fell to his might. His successor Entemena was more a man of peace and a patron of religion.

The last king of Lagash, Urukagina, was the usurper and a great reformer in the interest of the common man. He gave the first series of just laws in human history to his people. The tablets on which his decrees and declarations are recorded have come down to us. He announces that he gave liberty to his people. By one of his decrees the death tax was cut down to one-fifth and much of the exploitation of the people by priests and hierarchy of officials was
suppressed. Before Urukagina Lagash had terrorized the cities of Sumer and appropriated huge amounts of exactions which were usually shared by high officials of state and the priests. Urukagina abolished the various undue taxes and cut down considerably the needs, the privileges and the revenue of the priests and officials. He did not mind even if his ordinances affected his own purse. He promulgated new laws regarding divorce and it was his proud declaration that "the strong man did no harm to the widow and the orphan." He was thus a great benefactor of the weak and the oppressed. The result was that by his favour of the poor and the powerless he made the high-ups his enemy.

Umma in the meanwhile had become independent and strong and was ruled by the powerful Lugal-zaggisi who resolved to take advantage of the weakness of his old enemy. He attacked suddenly and ended the reign of Urukagina and put an end to the domination of Lagash. He trounced the city in a holocaust, massacred the townfolk in the streets gutting them with corpses, destroyed its temples and carried its gods away in chains like slaves to his own capital.

Lagash, however, despite its holocaust, did not diet out and it revived and rallied under the enlightened ruler of its pious king Gudea in or about the twenty-sixth century B.C. He was greatly honoured among his Sumerian subjects as a ruler of unparalleled piety, who built temples and installed images of divinities therein. He patronized religion, arts and letters and ruled his people with a mild hand but kept social justice by treating them with perfect equality. One of the inscriptions declares: "During seven years the maid-servant was the equal of his mistress, the slave walked beside his master, and in my town the weak rested by the side of the strong." His piety has been brought out in a prayer to the goddess Bau, the pa'ron divinity of Lagash. It runs as follows:

O my Queen, the Mother who established Lagash,
The people on whom thou lookest is rich in power;
The worshipper on whom thou lookest, his life is prolonged.

I have no mother—thou art my mother;
I have no father—thou art my father...
My goddess Bau, thou knowest what is good;
Thou hast given me the breath of life.
Under the protection of thee, my Mother,
In the shadow I will reverently dwell.

An eloquently quiet statue of Gudea is exhibited in the Louvre Museum seated in a chair, his hands, with five fingers on one and six on the other, folded in his lap, his flat feet resting on the pedestal, eyes wide open, the forehead partly covered by a caplike flat band worked with rows of beads. He sits like a god and no wonder his people worshipped him as a god after he had passed away.

Lugalzaggisi thus became the chief ruler in Babylonia and he shifted his capital to Uruk where he styled himself as the king of the land of Sumer. Kish and Opis were next conquered and what followed was unprecedented in the annals of the time; for he carried his arms right down to the coast of the Mediterranean across Syria subduing all the territory between Babylonia and the sea. Writes the king in his panegyric, “From the rising of the sun unto the setting of the same has Enlil granted him dominion.” This was the first time Syria had come under the sway of the east. Lugalzaggisi ruled for twenty-five years. One result of this temporary occupation of that land was the spread of the Sumerian culture in that region of which the outstanding feature was the cuneiform writing. As for the people, they had long before been Semitized. Other mighty Sumerian kings and conquerors, who followed Lugal-Zaggisi and ruled over the unified Sumeria, were Lugal-shagengur, Lugal-kigub-nidudu, Ninigi-dubti, Lugal-andanukhunga and others. The word ‘ugal’ forming the fore part of the
names of these potentates meant ‘king’. The title had been taken by the Sumerian priests before the rise of secular dynasties of kings to indicate that they were not only the mouth of the gods but also regular kings being the vicegerents of the gods on earth.

The Semites

In the meanwhile a very vigorous people, the Babylonians, were making their effect felt and soon they became masters of Sumeria.

Lugal-zaggisi, the great conqueror, was deposed by Sharrukin (Sargon I) of Akkad and Kish who founded his own Semitic dynasty. The Semitic sun had now appeared on the horizon and was moving fast towards the crest of the sky. Sharrukin was the first Semitic king to leave monuments of importance. From his inscriptions it is evident that after conquering Uruk and Ur he led Lugal-zaggisi in chains through the gate of Enlil and Nippur. We learn that he subdued also the coast of the Mediterranean, Lebanon, the region of Taurus, eastern Syria, the Syrian coast, and northern Syria, and carried his arms eastward across Elam to Persia.

Sargon had risen from the masses and had been a commoner. Nobody knows who his father was but his mother is known to have been a temple prostitute and like most great men, Moses, Karna of the Mahabharata, Christ and Leonardo da Vinci, he too had been born of illegitimate liaison. He is supposed to have given the story of his birth thus: “My humble mother conceived me; in secret she brought me forth. She placed me in a basket boat of rushes; with pitch she closed my door.” Like Karna he was rescued and brought up by a water-carrier. Later as a page boy he served the king by becoming his cup-bearer. His zeal to serve endeared him to his master and he soon rose in his favour. Having then gained great influence over the court
and country he rebelled against his lord, dispossessed him of his power and throne and captured the kingdom himself, and embarked on a career of conquest. He built the first empire of history, more than five centuries before Hammurabi and ruled over his 'Universal Dominion' from his capital at Agade. The proud prince is portrayed on a monolithic stone discovered at Susa in great dignity flouting a long beard.

Towards the close of his reign a general revolt broke out and Babylon was destroyed.

His son restored the empire after the confusion and reconquered Elam. Marrishtusu, the third in the line, was a powerful prince and left us some important documents. But the greatest ruler of the family was unquestionably Sharrukin, more popularly called "Sargon of Agade." Apart from becoming the greatest conqueror of the times Sargon was accepted by the Babylonians as a great hero and numerous legends and traditions have grown around his name. He was the emperor of all Western Asia and became the model for the later rulers to imitate and emulate. Sargon ruled sometime about 2800 B.C.

Soon after there followed the Semitic chiefs, Naram-Sin and Sharagali-sharri of Akkad. Naram-Sin was the son of Sargon I and the grandfather of the latter prince and ruled sometime about 2750 B.C. He conquered Lulubu and the land as far as the northern Mesopotamia. Eastern Arabia too was brought under the empire and he rightly styled himself as the "King of the Four Quarters of the World." From other sources also it is evident that both Naram-Sin and his grandson Sharagali-sharri inherited the empire of Sargon. The stele, found at Susa by De Morgan in 1897 and deposited in the Louvre, commemorating Naram-Sin's subjugation of Satuni, king of Lulubu, is a splendid piece and is reckoned among the triumphs of ancient Babylonian art which reached its apogee in this relief. It depicts with ex-
ceptional vigour Naram-Sin's march with his officers on his enemy Satuni of the northern uplands and details the figures to an unprecedented degree in the relief.

Sharagali-sharri was followed by anarchy which was brought to an end by Dudu who restored peace in the land. The family, however, could not endure long and shortly after his son's reign, Uruk fell to the might of the mountaineers of Guti, the hills of the Zagros. The Guti dynasty ruled for 125 years and was followed at Uruk by a Sumerian prince and the land ultimately passed on to the Third Dynasty of Ur. Next followed Ur-Nammu. The second king of the new dynasty of Ur assumed a new title, that of the "King of Sumer and Akkad." This was a Sumerian dynasty that had been set up at Ur. The kings of the dynasty endeavoured to outdo the Semite rulers Naram-Sin and the great Sargon and their reaction against them was such that they sacked the shrines of the Semitic gods and carried off their temple-treasures. This was more true of Shulgi, the son of Ur-Nammu, than of any other.

Not only the king but also the state of the patron deity of Ur and mother-goddess Ishtar was torn from its base and carried away by the conquerors. Through the words of the profane divinity the Sumerian poet wails:

Me the foe hath ravished, yea, with hands unwashed;
Me his hands have ravished, made me die of terror.
Oh, I am wretched! Naught of reverence hath he!
Stripped me by robes, and clothed therein his consort,
Tore my jewels from me, therewith decked his daughter,
(Now) I read his courts—my very person sought he
In the shrines. Alas, the day when to go forth I trembled.
He pursued me in my temple; he made me quake with fear,
There within my walls; and like a dove that fluttering percheth
On a rafter, like a flitting owlet in a cavern hidden,
Birdlike from my shrine he chased me,
From my city like a bird he chased me, me singing,
"Far behind, behind me is my temple."
This dynasty of Ur was put an end to by the king of Elam who conquered Ur and carried its ruler, the third successor of Shulgi, off to his capital. The end of the dynasty came sometime about 2357 B.C. The Elamite conqueror also sacked Uruk and carried away its goddess Nana to Susa. The Sumerian rule of Ur was followed by the two Semitic dynasties ruling one after the other. Among the kings following two were important. Of these one was Ur-Enurta or Ur-Ninurta and Rim-Sin; the latter belonged to a family of rulers that had come from Elam and was the contemporary and rival of the great Babylonian emperor Hammurabi.

2. BABYLON

As a race the Babylonians differed from the Sumerians. The Babylonians were Semites while the Sumerians were not. Some think that ethnically Babylonians were akin to, even perhaps collaterals of, the Assyrians, and moved down the Euphrates and the Tigris in course of time. Some assert that they had descended from the Akkadians and the Sumerians being a joint product of the two. Culturally no doubt they were Sumerians but ethnically the Babylonians were very distinct from them and held sway over Babylon...
and the region around when the Sumerian city-states were ruling over their world and making history. It will not be possible to assert that the Akkadians were non-existent when the Sumerians were creating their culture. The notion that the Babylonians were hybrid and a cross between the Akkadians and Sumerians gained ground under the haze of cloud that made them the inheritors of their culture. But the inheritors of culture are by no means necessarily the inheritors of blood. The Amorites and the Akkadians may have already settled down in the west and north of the Sumerians when the latter immigrated and settled down across the delta of the Euphrates and the Tigris. Some of the ruling houses of the Sumerians and the Babylonians were contemporaries. Then if the Babylonians came from afar and settled down in the neighbourhood of the Sumerians, the latter must have marked the important event which they never did. At least their history does not afford any evidence of it. The imperative conclusion is that the Babylonians had been there from where they sallied against the Sumerians—after all their cities of Kish and Agade had been there—but only a subordinate wild people, undoubtedly Semitic and formed from the various Semites settled in Akkad. And by the time the Babylonians rose to power and licked the Sumerian royal houses their common folks had been completely Sumerianized in culture.

The city of Babylon had hitherto been an insignificant factor in the history of Akkad. It lay exposed to attacks from the Western Desert and when fortune smiled on the Amorite princes they did not fail to make a debut on the Babylonian stage. The new conquerors made Babylon the chief city of the land and raised the humble Marduk to the status of the king of gods.

After the rule of a few kings of the dynasty Hammurabi (c. 2123-2081 B.C.) succeeded to the throne and soon proved his might among the princes. He gave to his king-
dom the status of an empire and he came to be reckoned as one of the greatest kings of all times. He had inherited the whole of the ancient Akkad but southern Babylonia still lay open to the aggression of the Elamite conquerors. He wrested from the powerful Elamite lord of Larsam both Uruk and Isin. But soon Rim-Sin reasserted himself and Hammurabi was not able to register any more conquests in that direction. Later he became restive again and subjugated a large part of Mesopotamia. He made Shitullum, to the north of Akkad, and Ashur, further north, which later became the seat of power of the Assyrian empire, his tributary states.

The tussle between Rim-Sin and Hammurabi was great. It was natural too for both were neighbours and powerful and ambitious. One ruled southern Babylonia down to the coast of the Persian Gulf and the other controlled an empire reaching to Armenia and Palestine although his capital lay within easy attack from the south.

Until a few years back Elam had been a weak state generally obeying the commands of the kings of Sumer and Akkad but now it had become powerful and its rulers often made inroads on both of these kingdoms occasionally despoiling their temples and carrying their kings captives. If a Hebrew tradition can be believed, right at this time Chedorlamoer (perhaps Kudur-lagamar) imposed his will upon the rival kings of Babylonia and communicated across them with the Hittites.

But in his forty-three years Hammurabi bid for power and challenged the Elamites everywhere. His generals Siniddinum and Inukshamar took Ur and Larsam and invaded Emutbalim (in Elam) and overran it. Elam, however, remained out of his power but the Babylonian monarch annexed the entire territory in Southern Babylonia up-
to the borders of Elam and unified the whole of the region from Elam to the Mediterranean into an empire.

Hammurabi was a great builder and he devoted his energy to public work. He built forts and palaces and temples and shrines. People became opulent during his rule and the enormous taxes levied on them, according to the code of law that he established, they paid with pleasure; he beautified his capital Babylon, now the richest and most prosperous city of the contemporary world. He built the great temple of Marduk for the upkeep of which and of the priests he established a gigantic granary. He built a bridge over the Euphrates and the city grew on both sides of the river. Ships manned with ninety men plied up and down the river and the population of the great city increased to an enormous number. The opulence of the great metropolis endured until it was sacked and ruined by the Persian emperor Xerxes in the fifth century B.C., for although the ruling dynasties had gone on changing Babylon had continued to rule the empire as its principal capital. Another important work of the great monarch was the digging of a canal between Kish and the Persian Gulf which irrigated the land and made it a real Eden and thus secured the safety of the nations against the inundations of the Tigris.

Hammurabi’s letters and despatches are uncommon specimens of ancient political dealings, but what is still more important is his Code, the first human planned and extensive code of law. It is inscribed on a stele discovered at Susa in 1909 and has made Hammurabi’s name familiar to the modern world as of no other king of antiquity. It is true that much of the Code is based on Sumerian laws, yet its scientific recast and classification make the Babylonian emperor rightly a great lawgiver.

Apart from his establishing a great empire Hammurabi is remembered for his remarkable code. The world knows
him mostly through this code. The Code is inscribed on a cylindrical stele bearing god Shamash (the Sun) seated on a throne and giving the great document to Hammurabi who is standing and receiving it. The god is bare of body except the bell-like skirt and a conical headgear with coils round it. The king wears a long gown and robe passing over the left shoulder and a broad-banded cap. Below is the long inscription containing some 285 laws arranged scientifically under the titles of Personal Property, Real Estate, Trade and Business, the Family, Injuries and Labour. It begins with a salutation of the gods but is perfectly secular outstanding in its legal enlightenment and equally barbarous punishment. It leaves no aspect of living untouched which it is the business of a state to deal with. The Code opens with a preamble which asserts its purpose as being "to cause justice to prevail in the land, to destroy the wicked and the evil, to prevent the strong from oppressing the weak, to enlighten the land and to further the welfare of the people." The great document concludes with the following words: "In my bosom I carried the people of the land of Sumer and Akkad; in my wisdom I restrained them, that the strong might not oppress the weak and that they should give justice to the orphan and the widow.... Hammurabi indeed is a ruler who is like a real father to his people; he has established prosperity for all time, and given a pure government to the land. In the days that are yet to come, for all future time, may the king who is in the land observe the words of righteousness which I have written upon my monument." Can there be a greater ideal living in the Indian concept of raja prakritiranjanat, 'a king is so called for his duty is to please his subjects?' There is a ring in the words of the Code of the verse ending Kalidasa's Sakuntala: Pravartatam prakritihitaya-parthivah, 'let the king exert himself in the good of his people!' And this document forestals Manu's Code by about a couple of
thousand years. It had been carried from Babylon in about
1100 B.C. to Susa as a triumph of victory and is now ex-
hibited in the Louvre as an eternal treasure of pride.

Hammurabi was an extraordinary organizer of empire
and government. It was mainly through him that Baby-
lon became the undisputed metropolis of ancient Mesopota-
mia. For about a millennium and a half the city kept on
arousing the cupidity of all the monarchs of the ancient
world.

But once the strong hand of Hammurabi was removed
from the scene the kingdom again became vulnerable. His
son had to face the trouble which kept on coming from
Southern Babylonia and from the coast. The coast became
independent where a new dynasty took root. Elam, how-
ever, was reconquered by the fourth successor of Hammu-
rab.

It was about this time that the inroads of the Kashshu
or Kassites an Indo-European nation, began and their
tribes started pressing from Media through the Zagros to-
wards the fertility and wealth of Babylonia. About the
same time occurred the first onslaughts of an exceptionally
vigorous Aryan nation that came from beyond the Taurus
in Anatolia. They were the terrible ‘Goyyim’ of Asia
Minor, the formidable Khattis with whose popular name, the
Hittites, the lay reader is more familiar. They came down
suddenly, unexpectedly, irresistibly. During the reign of
Samsu-ditana, Mursil I (Murshilish), the king of Khatti,
appeared (c. 1926 B.C.) before Babylon, stormed and sack-
ed it, putting an end to the empire of Hammurabi and to the
1st Dynasty of that great city. Death and destruction trail-
ed the route of the fierce Hittites who vanished as soon as
they had appeared. The Kassites took this opportunity and
their leader, Gandash, at once captured Babylonia (Kar-
Duniyash) and took the throne thus founding the Kassite
dynasty, which flourished for six centuries.
3. KASSITES AND MITANNIANS

Very little is known about the Kassite kings. We have only a string of names and there are unbridgeable voids between the names. Occasionally the curtain is drawn, a king appears, hacks and cuts, and is lost in the folds again. Agum III became important as he took over the last fastness of the kingdom of the Sea-land. Already about 1710 B.C. his uncle Ulam-buriash had overthrown the kingdom, which had been the last piece of land held by the Sumerians. They had been broken and thrown down from power by the Semites and yet they had gone on sticking to insignificant principalities and during their last phase of existence they had even carved out a coastal kingdom. This kingdom, despite the numerous thrusts and parries, had held on and the Babylonian kings had to abandon their hope to conquer them. The Kassites, who took Babylon, could not reduce this kingdom and for three centuries since their coming to the crest in Babylonian affairs, the Sumerians defied them successfully. Now the kingdom disappeared from the face of earth and with it the last vestiges of that non-Semitic civilization which had taught the whole of Western Asia all it was worth. Nothing remained except their script. Their gods were appropriated by the neighbours and their language vanished, and ultimately they themselves as a nation.

The Kassites were Aryan barbarians who cared little for the fine arts. We have few monuments ascribed to them. Temple-building and like activities were completely at a standstill during their regime. Literature received no stimulus and there is positive paucity of records. Scribes were in no demand and arts were neglected. It was a dull period devoid of activities, of war or peace. There were Indo-European elements in their language and their names were Aryan. Their chief god was Suryash, Indian Surya, another was Maruttash, Vedic Marut, and their word for god was bugash,
Slav **bogu**, and Vedic **bhaga**. The Indo-Aryans were perhaps already settled in India, the Medes and Persians held the Armenian heights and the eastern uplands, the Hittites were holding sway over Asia Minor, and had now conquered Babylon.

It was about this time that another powerful Aryan tribe (perhaps belonging to a stock similar to the Kassites), the Mitannians, were founding their kingdom of Mitanni in the north between the Euphrates and Tigris. The names of the Mitannian princes too are Aryan, for example, Saush-Shatar, Artatama, Shutarna, Dushratta. Likewise their gods are Aryan and of Indian Vedic origin, viz., Varuna, Indra, Nasatyau. The Mitannians had become masters of both Semites and Hittites in Northern Syria, which remained tributary to them till the Egyptian conquest in the 16th century. Assyria also for a time in the beginning played a feudatory role to them.

**Sumerian and Babylonian Culture**

Sumerians were a non-Semitic people who gave to the whole of Babylonia or for that matter to the entire Asian west several incidents of their culture, the most important of them being the mode of writing called the cuneiform. Later, as the Sumerians lost in political influence and the Semites gained supremacy in that sphere, the former culture declined and a systematic Semitization started until the whole of the west from the coast of the Persian Gulf to that of the Mediterranean Sea had become completely Semitic in look as well as in spirit.

The first and greatest contribution of the Sumerians was the art of writing to the world. Their wedge-like writing is technically called ‘cuneiform’ and was written with a stylus on wet clay or brick from right to left as against the Babylonian written from the left to right. Later the clay-tablets
or the bricks were dried in the sun. All contracts, sales, business transactions and documents were written on and transmitted to the posterity through these bricks. The cuneiform writing itself, like the Egyptian, evolved first from the pictographic and then through the ideographic signs and symbols into the phonetic, syllabic and the alphabetic. It seems that while developing this process of writing the Egyptian and the Sumerian scribes had been communicating with each other for an inscription found at Sinai corresponds to both which makes it difficult to conclude as to who was indebted to whom. The oldest Sumerian inscriptions incised on stone have been dated to about 3600 B.C. while the bricks and the clay-tablets to about 3200 B.C.

The Sumerian language, as already pointed out, was agglutinative. Their numerous records on baked clay furnish us with exceedingly fascinating pieces of literature. Numerous traditions and legends have been found preserved in that literature, two of them being the story of the Deluge and the prototype of Epic of Gilgamesh.

The first literature of Sumeria was the prayers and priestly records. Some 30,000 tablets, neatly arranged at Tallo and forming the first library of the world, were discovered by De Sarzac. Slowly legends grew into epics.

The Sumerians were builders but certainly not as great as the Egyptians, Babylonians or the Assyrians. But the arch and the vault were perhaps the Sumerian creation which came into universal use through the Assyrians. There were arches in the drains of Nippur and in the tombs of Ur. Stone being scarce, most of the houses and palaces were built of brick. For the temples stone was imported and blue enameled tiles were used and their interiors, inlaid with precious stones and metals, were panelled with cedar wood. The solid temple, Ziggurat, a tower structure with an outer stair and rising to several storeys, was a Sumerian creation. On the top was a room with a bed where the priestess rested.
amuse the gods or the priests. The statues of Gudea, the Stele of the Vultures and the Victory Stele of Naram-sin are crude but a copper statuette of a bull is a fine specimen of art and the famous silver cow-head and the stringed instrument found in the grave of Queen Shubad at Ur are finished in fine. So also are the gold sheath and lapis-lazuli dagger and the gold and silver vases found in the graves dating from the fourth millennium B.C. Pottery was of no importance, mere earthenware.

Religious Life

The pantheon of the Sumerian gods was fairly crowded for every city had its own tutelary deity. The gods had their temples and great riches were amassed in them. Patesis were their priests who concentrated at a time both religious and political power. Endless revenues were their charge. Temples were solid structures and were later called ziggurat. The Sumerian and Babylonian gods got so mixed up that it has become difficult today to distinguish the former from the latter.

Usually Enki (the earth god), Enzu (the moon-god), Enlil (the supreme god), Utu (the sun-god), Ana (the sky-god), Inanna (mother-goddess) are supposed to be Sumerian deities. Enlil was the god who had brought about the Great Flood, Enki had calmed him down, and Inanna had shamed him for his lust of destruction. It is generally supposed that gods and goddesses without consorts are Sumerian in origin and attempts have been made to separate the Sumerian from the Babylonian gods. Some, for example suggest that gods Ea, Sin or Nannar, Ningirsu, and such others were pre-Sumerian. The Semitic Bel (or Baal) perhaps emerged from Sumerian Enlil, as did Shamash from Utu. Marduk, the supreme Semitic god of Babylon, was certainly Sumerian in origin, unlike Ramman or Adad, the thunder-god, who was Semitic. Among the Semitic godd-
esses were Belit, the consort of Bel, Sarpanitum of Marduk, Laz of Nergal. Anunitum is perhaps of Semitic origin and Ishtar of Syrian or Canaanite. She was served by eunuch-priests.

Marduk, the top god of the Babylonians, is connected with the Creation myth. There was chaos around in the beginning. Neither there was the heaven above nor the earth below. Apsu, the Ocean, was the father and Tiamat, Chaos, the mother; they mingled their waters and the latter gave birth to them all. Then of a sudden Tiamat, in order to make Chaos supreme, destroyed all order. Marduk slew her and, splitting her body into two formed the sky and the earth. This Babylonian story of creation was recorded on seven tablets—one for each day of creation—recovered from the library of Ashurbanipal at Nineveh and formed only a copy of the original which was a Sumerian myth. Marduk then formed man by a lump of clay by kneading earth with his own blood. Man was first living as a savage when the composite figure of Oannes, half fish and half philosopher, taught him the arts and sciences and plunged into the Sea. Then dissatisfied with the sinful men the gods brought about a deluge to destroy them. The rest of the story has been related elsewhere.

Ishtar (Greeks mention her as Astarte and the Jews as Ashtoreth). She was the goddess of fertility and fecundity, hailed as bounteous mother, and especially divinity presiding over love and beauty. War and prostitutes were her charge and she herself has been called ‘a compassionate courtesan.’ Sometimes she was represented as a bisexual deity flouting a beard. She was also called ‘the Virgin’ or ‘the Virgin Mother’ and represented naked offering her breast. This means that no stigma attached to her unbounded amours. To the hero Gilgamesh she was fickle and untrustworthy and her only function was to seduce and betray men.

Thus we find that the religion of both the Sumerians and
the Semites was pantheistic and that throughout that region
and beyond, indeed from the Indus to the Mediterranean and
from the Baltic Sea to the Nile, idolatry was the norm, and
animal sacrifice the order. Only the Aryans were greatly
non-idolatrous but pantheistic all the same. One is struck
with the common affinities among the functions of the
gods and among the numerous legends. We have
already alluded to the great legends of the Deluge and Gil-
gamesh. One of the most fascinating is the legend of Etana
and the Eagle. The Eagle carried Etana to the heavens and
towards the sun and then fell down to the earth. This has
such a resemblance with the Greek legend of Icarus and with
the Indian Sampati. Likewise part of the legend dealing with
the war of Eagle with the Serpent is so similar to the Indian
Garuda legends, of the offsprings of Vinata and Kadru.

Social Life

Perhaps no civilization has been ever infested with the
belief in demons as much as the Babylonian. Medicine
mostly consisted of charms. People wore amulets to ward
off demons and diseases. Omens played a great part both
in the life of the king and the commoner. Every king
kept his astrologer close and always consulted him before
undertaking an expedition. The 'Evil Eye' was an ob-
session with the Babylonians and they sought to cancel its
effect by several means, one of them being the wearing of a
particular kind of stone strung in a black thread woven by
a virgin. Talismans, amulets, charms were used to frighten
the demons away who lurked everywhere and caused
all sorts of illness, injuries and misfortunes. People suffer-
ing from any disease were supposed possessed and incan-
tations and formulas were chanted to exorcise them. The
Babylonian was a devil-infested living and prayers and
hymns were addressed to them as warmly as the laudations
to gods. Some of these demons found their way to the be-
liefs of the Vedic people and their names Turfari and Jur-
fari have been mentioned in Rigveda. So also mention has been made in that Veda and the Atharvaveda of Apsu Tiamat, Taimata) and in a different way of Alay-Balay (Aligi-Biligi, original Sumerian Elulu-Belulu), all in the context of sorcery and incantations for exorcising demons or cancelling the effect of snake-poison.

The morals of the Babylonians have been considered very low even by the contemporary ancients. Babylon has been called a 'sink of sin' and its woman a 'whore'. Prostitution was much in evidence and it was mostly associated with temples, chiefly the temple of Mylitta, the goddess of love and prostitutes. Life became very lax when the temples grew rich. Both Herodotus and Berossus furnish evidence to prove that prostitution flourished on the premises of the temples. Herodotus writes:

"Every native woman is obliged, once in her life, to sit in the temple of Venus, and have intercourse with some stranger. And many disdaining to mix with the rest, being proud on account of their wealth, come in covered carriages, and take up their station at the temple with a numerous train of servants attending them. But the far greater part do thus: many sit down in the temple of Venus, wearing a crown of cord round their heads; some are continually coming in, and others are going out. Passages marked out in a straight line lead to in every direction through the women, along which strangers pass and make their choice. When a woman has once seated herself she must not return home till some stranger has thrown a piece of silver in her lap, and lain with her outside the temple. He who throws the silver must say thus: "I beseech the goddess Mylitta to favour thee; for the Assyrians call Venus Mylitta. (For the Greeks the Assyrians and Babylonians were the same people.) The silver may be ever so small, for she will not reject it, inasmuch as it is not lawful for her to do so, for such silver is accounted sacred. The woman follows
the first man that throws, and refuses no one. But when she has had intercourse and has absolved herself from her obligation to the goddess, she returns home; and after that time, however great a sum you may give her you will not gain possession of her. Those that are endowed with beauty and symmetry of shape are soon set free; but the deformed are detained a long time, from inability to satisfy the law, for some wait for a space of three or four years."

The temples of Babylonia were as a rule provided with prostitutes. "Various classes of them lived within the temple precincts, plied their trade there, and amassed, some of them, great fortunes. Such temple prostitutes were common in western Asia. We find them in Israel, Phrygia, Phoenicia, Syria, etc.; in Lydia and Cyprus the girls earned their marriage dowries in this way." "Sacred prostitution continued in Babylonia until abolished by Constantine (c. 325 A.D.). Alongside it, in the wine-shops kept by women, secular prostitution flourished." "In general the Babylonians were allowed considerable premarital experience. It was considered permissible for men and women to form unlicensed unions, 'trial marriages', terminable at the will of either party; but the woman in such cases was obliged to wear an olive—in stone or terra cotta—as a sign that she was a concubine". "After the Persian Conquest," writes Will Durant, "the death of self-respect brought an end of self-restrained; the manners of the courtesan crept into every class; women of good family came to consider it mere courtesy to reveal their charms indiscriminately for the greatest happiness of the greatest number". Herodotus is more pointed. "Every man of the people in his poverty," says he, "prostituted his daughters for money." In 42 A.D. some five centuries after Herodotus, wrote Quintus Curtius who seems to be romantically impressed by the custom of the Babylonians. He says: "Nowhere are things better arranged with a view to voluptuous pleasures."
But marriages were monogamous, and once performed, they were almost inviolable except in certain circumstances and fidelity was rigidly maintained. The punishment for adultery was drowning or where the husband was merciful he could drive her adulterous wife naked into the street. But if the husband had been absent for a long time and left her unprovided she could ‘cohabit with another man, without legal prejudice to her reunion with her husband on the latter’s return’.

Marriage

The parents arranged the normal marriage. The suitor was expected to present a substantial gift to his would-be father-in-law who in his turn was expected to dower his daughter even more richly. Sometimes marriage was the result of purchase also. Herodotus, however, refers also to a different custom, which, although he does not make it a non-universal practice, may have been only partially true or restricted to particular regions or peoples. He says that daughters of marriageable age used to be brought up once a year to a place where a great number of men gathered round them. A public crier first announced the bargain or the auction and then sold them all, one after another. He began with the prettiest and having got a good amount for her, he put up the next fairest. But this was done only encumbered with the condition that the buyer must marry the girl thus purchased. A similar public auction of girls has been said to have existed among some tribes of the Punjab by the historians accompanying Alexander.

There was purdah among the women of the upper classes who were chaperoned by eunuchs when they went out of the house. In the house itself they were confined to a particular part of it, a distinctive Zenana.

The Sciences

Babylonia specialized in the number of her sky-
gazers. Astronomy and astrology were particular contributions of that land to the world. It began with the search of the means by which to divine the fate of men, and tainted with magic and occult ways, it was bound to be unscientific. All the planets were known and named but named only to the gods. Jupiter, for example represented Marduk, Mercury Nabu, Mars Nergal, the Sun Shamash, the Moon Sin, Saturn Ninib and Venus Ishtar. The planets and stars were supposed to cast their influence on the destiny of men and astrologers went round reading horoscopes and proclaiming future in exchange of money.

Slowly the study of scientific astronomy was begun and as early as 2000 B.C. accurate records of the heliacal rising and setting were registered. The Babylonians soon spotted the 'orbits of sun and moon, noted their conjunctions and eclipses, calculated the courses of the planets, and made the first clear distinction between a planet and a star,' and following the Sumerians, divided the ecliptic—the path of the earth around the sun—into the twelve signs of the Zodiac. The circle was divided into 360 degrees, the degree into 60 minutes and the minute into 60 seconds. They also invented a water-clock (a clepsydra), and a sundial to measure time. All these and the divisions of time were transmitted by the Greeks to the Indian astronomy. A calendar of twelve lunar months was devised to which a thirteenth month was added to make it agree with the seasons. The month was divided into 4 weeks according to the four phases of the moon; the day, counted from the rising of the moon to the next, was divided into twelve hours and the hour into 30 minutes. How modern all this looks!

It will be seen from the above that the Babylonians struck on a sexagesimal system of calculation by sixties. The sign for 1 was repeated up to 9; a sign for 10 repeated up to 90, and there was a sign for 100. Besides multiplication and division, their calculation was marked by the
halves, quarters, thirds, squares and cubes of the basic numbers.

**Writing and Letters**

In the domain of letters and literature too the Babylonians made a mark although in that sphere, like the gods and religion, much of it was borrowed from and based on the Sumerian prototype. The writing particularly, the cuneiform, was an extension of the Sumerian script, the mode being to incise letters with a stylus on clay. The clay tablets, when they happened to be letters, were dusted with powder, wrapped in a clay envelop and then stamped with the cylinder seal of the sender. Such seals have been found in great numbers in Babylonian towns. As for the documents and compositions of literature, they were written down on tables of clay which were placed in jars and the jars, classified and arranged on shelves in the palaces and temples. One of such remarkable libraries, that of Borsippa, contained some 30,000 tablets. They had been copied and preserved in the library of the greatest collector and archaeologist of antiquity Ashurbanipal at Nineveh.

The decipherment of the Sumero-Babylonian cuneiform was no less a feat of discovery than that of the Egyptian. Having worked for several years, Prof. Georg Grotenfend of the University of Gottingen announced the decipherment of eight of forty-two characters and the reading of the names of three kings. But the final decipherment came when a British diplomat Henry Rawlinson discovered the great epigraph of Darius I at Behistun in three languages the old Persian, the Babylonian and the Assyrian with the same content of the exploits of the Persian emperor. The inscription lay high on the face of a precipice and Rawlinson staked his life copying the cuneiform. After working hard for twelve years he announced his decipherment. On verification the Royal Asiatic Society found
it correct and the decipherment was finalized and a thousand pieces of writing were read.

The Babylonian language was a composite tongue derived from the languages of the Sumerians and the Akkadians. The Babylonian was written in characters originally Sumerian but since in course of time the language had got far away from its base vocabularies and grammar had to be prepared to comprehend the older classic and follow its structure. About one-fourth of the tablets in the Nin-eveh library of Ashurbanipal are devoted to dictionaries and grammars of the Sumerian, Babylonian and Assyrian languages. Like the Sumerian the Babylonian writing also contented itself with a syllabary where the characters were syllables and not letters. Some three hundred signs were used.

The Babylonian language, however, developed, besides its considerable business literature, creative writing in verse and prose. Its poetry is composed in meter and elaborate stanzas. There are hymns and chants, fables, love letters and love poems of a high order. There was also an epic based on the Sumerian original, extended and finished in the Babylonian own, entitled the Epic of Gilgamesh. Some of the love letters are exquisite and perfectly modern in tone and temper. One such, dated to about 2100 B.C., reads thus: “To Bibiya: May Shamash and Marduk give thee health forever. . . . I have sent to ask after thy health, let me know how thou art. I have arrived in Babylon, and see thee not; I am very sad.” Some of the love poems begin with lines like “My heart is full of merriment and song” or “My love is a light.”

But the most remarkable of this literature is the Epic of Gilgamesh, the first of the ancient epics of the world, carrying stories as old as 3000 B.C. from the Sumerian and weaving others, which are Babylonian, into them. The most prominent of them is the story of the Deluge related to Gilgamesh, the legendary ruler of Uruk and a descen-
dants of Shamash-napishtim or Ziusuddu by the latter, the sole survivor of the flood who never died. Besides the story of the Deluge the main run of the epic builds up round the search of the herb of immortality and the expeditions undertaken by Gilgamesh across the seas and the wilds and weaves a number of legends as it moves on. Will Durant has abridged it admirably as follows:

Fathers complain to Ishtar that he (Gilgamesh) leads their sons out to exhausting toil "building the walls through the day, through the night;" and husbands complain that "he leaves not a wife to her master, not a single virgin to her mother," Ishtar bags Gilgamesh's god mother, Arura, to create another son equal to Gilgamesh and able to keep him busy in conflict, so that the husbands of Uruk may have peace. Arura beads a bit of clay, spits upon it, and moulds from it the satyr Engidu, a man with the strength of a boar, the mane of a lion, and the speed of a bird. Engidu (Enkidu) does not care for the society of men, but turns and lives with the animals; "he brows with the gazelles, he sports with the creatures of the water, he quenches his thirst with the beasts of the field." A hunter tries to capture him with nets and traps, but fails; and going to Gilgamesh, the hunter begs for the loan of a priestess who may snare Engidu with love. "Go, my hunter", says Gilgamesh, "take a priestess; when the beasts come to the watering-place let her display her beauty; he will see her, and his beasts that troop around him will be scattered."

The hunter and the priestess go forth, and find Engidu. There he is, woman!
Loosen thy buckle,
Unveil thy delight,
That he may take his fill of thee!
Hang not back, take up his lust!
When he sees thee, he will draw near.
Open thy robe that he rest upon thee!
Arouse in him rapture, the work of woman.  
Then will he become a stranger to his wild beasts,  
Who on his own steppes grew up with him.  
His bosom will press against thee.”  
Then the priestess loosened her buckle,  
Unveiled her delight,  
For him to take his fill of her.  
She hung not back, she took up his lust,  
She opened her robe that he rest upon her.  
She droused in him rapture, the work of woman.  
His bosom pressed against her.  
Engidu forgot where he was born.

For six days but seven nights Engidu remains with the sacred woman. When he tires of pleasure he awakes to find his friends the animals gone, whereupon he swoons with sorrow. But the priestess chides him: “Thou who are superb as a god, why dost thou live among the beasts of the field? Come, I will conduct thee to Uruk, where is Gilgamesh, whose might is supreme.” Ensnared by the vanity of praise and the conceit of his strength, Engidu follows the priestess to Uruk, saying, “Lead me to the place where is Gilgamesh. I will fight with him and manifest to him my power;” whereat the gods and husbands are well pleased. But Gilgamesh overcomes him, first with strength, then with kindness; they became devoted friends; they march forth together to protect Uruk from Elam; they return glorious with exploits and victory. Gilgamesh “put aside his war-harness, he put on his white garments, he adorned himself with the royal insignia, and bound on the diadem.” Thereupon Ishtar the insatiate falls in love with him, raises her great eyes to him, and says:

“Come, Gilgamesh, be my husband, thou! Thy love, give it to me as a gift, thou shalt be my spouse, and I shall be thy wife. I shall place thee in a chariot of lapis and gold, with golden wheels and mountings of onyx; thou shalt
be drawn in it by great lions, and thou shalt enter our house with the odorous incense of cedar-wood . . . . All the country by the sea shall embrace thy feet, kings shall bow down before thee, the gifts of the mountains and the plains they will bring before thee as tribute."

Gilgamesh rejects her, and reminds her of the hard fate she has inflicted upon her varied lovers, including Tammuz, a hawk, a stallion, a gardener and a lion. "Thou lovest me now," he tells her, "afterwards thou wilt strike me as thou didst these." The angry Ishtar asks of thee great god Anu that he create a wild urus to kill Gilgamesh. Anu refuses, and rebukes her. "Canst thou not remain quiet now that Gilgamesh has enumerated to thee thy unfaithfulness and ignominies?" She threatens that unless he grants her request she will suspend throughout the universe all the impulses of desire and love, and so destroy every living thing. Anu yields, and creates the ferocious urus; but Gilgamesh, helped by Engidu, overcomes the beast; and when Ishtar curses the hero, Engidu throws a limb of the urus into her face. Gilgamesh rejoices and is proud, but Ishtar strikes him down in the midst of his glory by afflicting Engidu with a mortal illness.

Mourning over the corpse of his friend, whom he has loved more than any woman, Gilgamesh wonders over the mystery of death. Is there no escape from that dull fatality? One man eluded it—Shamash-napishtim, he would know the secret of deathlessness. Gilgamesh resolves to seek Shamash-napishtim, even if he must cross the world to find him. The way leads through a mountain guarded by a pair of giants whose heads touch the sky and whose breasts reach down the Hades. But they let him pass, and he picks his way for twelve miles through a dark tunnel. He emerges upon the shore of a great ocean, and sees, far above the waters, the throne of Sabitu, virgin-goddess of the seas. He calls out to her to help him cross the water, "if it cannot
be done, I will lay me down on the land and die.” Sabitu takes pity upon him, and allows him to cross through forty days of tempest to the Happy Island where lives Shamash-napishtim, possessor of immortal life. Gilgamesh begs of him the secret of deathlessness. Shamash-napishtim answers by telling at length the story of the Flood, and how the gods, relenting of their mad destructiveness, had made him and his wife immortal because they had preserved the human species. He offers Gilgamesh a plant whose fruit will confer renewed youth upon him who eats it; and Gilgamesh, happy, starts back on his long journey home. But on the way he stops to bathe, and while he bathes a serpent crawls by and steals the plant.

Desolate, Gilgamesh reaches Uruk. He prays in temple after temple that Engidu may be allowed to return to life, if only to speak to him for a moment. Engidu appears, and Gilgamesh inquires of him the state of the dead. Engidu answers, “I cannot tell it thee; if I were to open the earth before thee if I were to tell thee that which I have seen, terror would overthrow thee, thou wouldst faint away.” Gilgamesh, symbol of that brave stupidity, philosophy, persists in his quest for truth: “Terror will overthrow me, I shall faint away, but tell it to me.” Engidu describes the miseries of Hades, and on this gloomy note the fragmentary epic ends.

The Epic of Gilgamesh is a verse drama uncovering a panorama of happenings, gruesome, quaint, gripping, romantic. This first creation of man tells how early he could put his imagination into such lively, such absorbing events.

By the time Hammurabi had ascended the throne the Sumerian writing had been developed, the bow and arrow had made their appearance and the horse also had been introduced by Aryan horsemen. The city-states had been united within a single kingdom. Trade and commerce flourished, crops were raised with the help of an irrigational
system of canals. Moneylending prospered and astronomy and astrology were cultivated. Taxes were paid in kind, mainly in corn. Prices were paid in grain and although weigh's and measures were current, currency proper was wanting. Barter was in use although big prices were computed in shekel-weights of silver. Free labourers were worse than slaves for they got only food and no protection from the employer. Slave was protected from the master by law. The judges, appointed by the king, went about on circuit meting out irrevocable justice. Land mostly belonged to the temples and the king.

The Code of Hammurabi inscribed on a stela, on the top of which the figure of the king is shown receiving the laws from the sun-god Shamash, is a most remarkable document throwing a flood of light on the social and legal aspects of life. To a great extent law was equitable. In the Sumerian times the wife had no right of divorce but Hammurabi modified the law in favour of the woman. The divorcing husband had to maintain her and her children, besides returning her marriage portion. She had the custody of the children also. Under the Sumerian laws man was more important than woman unlike the conditions in Egypt where she was the 'lady of the house' and more important than man. But in Babylonia women could own property, whether in houses or slaves, and could personally plead in the courts. Votaresses or vestals enjoyed unusual privileges. Religious prostitutes were a prominent feature of the Babylonian religion. The long robe was in fashion. The Sumerians cut their hair while the Semites grew their hair and beard.

Babylonians were greatly litigious. Sale or lease of land and other items of property were the main causes of litigation. Deeds were always drawn up in the valid legal form and were attested duly by witnesses and ultimately impressed with the respective seals of the parties or, in their
absence, with their nail marks. Cylinder-seals were rolled over the clay tablets. They were made of various metals and stones. They always bore some mythological scenes or figures and were the very triumphs of the glyptic art. Some seals were received from the Indus valley also as those bearing the figure of an elephant prove. Bull was sacred.

No description of the culture of Sumeria can be complete without a reference to the tombs of Ur. The excavated tombs have disclosed startling facts of life and death. In this regard the 'Royal Cemetery' with its fabulous treasures of gold and human victims of sacrifice may be alluded to. Like the Egyptians, the early Sumerians provided their dead with every earthly necessity, from food and drink to chariots, thrones and instruments of music. The material excavated from some 2,000 graves discloses the extraordinary culture of the early dynastic period of Ur wherein splendid metal-work figured to a great extent. Oppressive was the look of the "death-pits" which contained numerous skeletons of man-servants and maid-servants who had been made to accompany their masters and mistresses in death as they had done in life.

From the graves were obtained "gold bandlets for the forehead, bracelets and big earrings of gold, silver or copper, necklaces of gold, silver, cornelian and lapis heads, copper and silver axe-heads of the finest workmanship and superb spearheads, some leaf-shaped and others square in section which display the great skill in casting. Little conical vanity-cases of metal, with forceps, pick and ear-cleaner attached, are as modern in conception as in execution." These were the riches discovered in the private graves but they were nothing compared to what was obtained in the 'death-pits'. Their unbelievable contents were multitudes of human and animal sacrifices and rich furnishings were disposed about the floor of a great pit, at one end of which was a chamber of brick or stone containing the re-
mains of the royal or sacred personage in whose honour so many lives and so much treasure had to be committed to the dust. One of the tombs had the body of a woman with an elaborate headdress of gold holding in her hands an exquisite fluted gold tumbler. Four manservants were killed and their corpses placed by that of their mistress. Three sheep lay slaughtered out of the closed door of the chamber. The tomb-shaft contained several floors, the three uppermost layers having one human sacrifice apiece. The topmost layer further yielded a wooden box containing two gold-bladed daggers with hilts of lapis-lazuli studded with gold and cylinder-seal of shell carved and inscribed with the name of King Meskalamdug. Other tombs were still richer, both in wealth of precious metals and sacrificed humans—one containing as many as 74 victims. Mention may be made here of the glorious drinking vessels, wine-strainers and toilet accessories in chased gold, the extraordinary gold and silver headdresses and the harps adorned with great animals’ heads in gold and lapis from the grave of Lady Shubad, the silver boat and the superb fragments of a copper shield with figures of lions in repousse belonging to a certain Abargi, and the famous ‘standard’—an extraordinary object of wood, inlaid on two sides with scenes of a battle and a feast in polychrome mosaic. This habitat of the dead yielded in staggering profusion precious objects like four-wheeled wagons, each drawn by three oxen, splendid stone vessels, golden daggers, spears and axes of electrum (gold-silver alloy), lovely miniature animals of gold, soldiers’ helmets of copper, curious inlaid gaming-boards, and beds and ornaments of every description. What endless riches the dwellers of these rich Babylonian cities could command in those times prior to 2500 B.C. and what aids to beauty their ladies could handle! But what capacity to kill and cupidity to possess servants on the part of the masters and mistresses who had their corps of men and women to serve
them in life and who must again have them dead to guard their repose!

4. **HITTITES**

Hittites, the Biblical Heth, were generally called Khatti. The Egyptian called them Kheta and the Semites Goyyim, 'the nations'. They were perhaps an Indo-European people living in the snows of Taurus in Asia Minor. Since the Mesopotamian name of their land was Mushki, they came to be called Mushkaya. To the Mesopotamian Semites they were formidable barbarians with scant culture who descended on their northern cities from behind the snow only to rob and slay. Their inroads were terrible and devastating. We have already referred to their calamitous invasion of Babylon about 1925 B.C. About the beginning of the 2nd millennium B.C. parts of Northern Syria were colonized and settlements formed where Hittite princes ruled side by side with local dynasts and Aryan barons from Mitanni. They had their own culture and a peculiar hieroglyphic system of writing and for sometime even resisted the Semite influence but ultimately succumbed to it. The excavations at Carchemish and other sites have yielded material which give an insight into their civilization. The cuneiform writing penetrated beyond the Taurus and was used in the royal chancellery at Boghaz Kyoï. Such records also filled the imperial archives during the heyday of the Khatti Empire.

It is also possible that the Hittites were Anatolian nationals representing the Indo-European race who had many Aryan characteristics of worship. They were doubtless a white people from whom, it is said the 'white Syrians' are descended. Their tongue although had little common with the Indo-European and the names of their kings—Shubbiluliuma, Mursil, Muwatalli or Mutallu, Khattusil, Dudhalia, Arnuanda, Pudukhipa (queen) Muni-Dan (queen)
—generally were Anatolian. Only a few of these sound like the Aryan. Scholars, however, seem to agree now regarding their race, which, they think, was Indo-European.

Among their deities one universally worshipped was the mother-goddess Ma ('Mother'). Attis was the sun-god. For these there were temples owning great extents of land mostly profiting the priests, the Galli, who had to be eunuchs and who kept wandering in the country. Besides, Mithra (Vedic Mitra), the sun-god, and Men (Iranian Mao), the moon-god, were worshipped too and later perhaps Indra and Varuna of the Vedic pantheon also made their way into the Anatolian religion. These, we know from the famous Boghaz Kyoi inscription, were also the deities of the Aryan nobles of the Mitanni. The Boghaz Kyoi inscription is very important for another reason. It has been pointed out by some as an evidence of the eastern Aryan migration bearing on the Indo-Aryans of the Rigvedic period. The main difficulty in its acceptance is the nature of the gods themselves for they are Vedic Indian names and we know that their names and worship developed in the Punjab and were peculiar to the land. Nowhere else, except in Iran, were they known and worshipped and it may not be improbable that the gods travelled from India and were propagated in Asia Minor and Mesopotamia at a later date.

**History**

The earliest monarchs among the Hittites, known to us, were Khattusil I, Mursil I, Khantil, Khuzzias, Telibinus, and Khattusil II, father of the great conqueror Shubbiliuma. It was the records of the last named that were found at Boghaz Kyoi. He was the first king to use the cuneiform writing. Boghaz Kyoi represents the remains of the capital city of the Hittites called Khatti after the people and forming the inmost layer of the Hittite spider.
The city stood on the slope of a hill surrounded by a solid wall of polygonal masonry superimposed by towers and pierced at a few places by gates. In the citadel on the rock called Buyuk Kale, within the walls, numerous archives were preserved. It was a fastness-city 3,000 feet above the sea in an upland where snow lies through the winter, and the summer is bright and invigorating. This was the seat of the Hittite empire and the refuge of its shock-dealing princes. How the Hittites grew in power is a story of great cunning and boldness, calculation and courage, intrigue and conquest.

The end of the reign of Pharaoh Amenhetep III threw his Asian empire into confusion. North Syrian princes were uncertain whether their allegiance was due to Egypt or to Mitanni. It opened the way to the conquests of the energetic Khatti ruler Shubbiluliuma. But he knew that a direct bid for power that end would lead to crossing swords at once with both Egypt and Mitanni. He preferred to have recourse to intrigue and incited a revolt of the Hittite and Amorite princes in Lebanon. A curious complication was the result. Letters and despatches followed between Egyptian lords in that part and their master at home and fealty was pledged and broken by local princes. Egypt was deceived and Abdashirta and his son Aziru, the Amorite leaders, conducted this campaign of war, diplomacy and lies with incredible craft and crowning success. These intrigues had the support of Shubbiluliuma.

Now it was time for the Hittite monarch to act. The Mitanni were in a deplorable state due to their internal disaffection. Dushratta had two brothers one of whom, Artashumara, succeeded their father Shutarna but was murdered. Dushratta ascended the throne while his other brother, Artatama, his son Shutarna and grandson Itakama lived as semi-independent dynasts in Naharin intriguing against him with the Hittite king. At one turn of events when matters be-
came easy for him, he accused Dushratta of breaking a former treaty, crossed the Euphrates forthwith, and plundered the northern frontiers of Mitanni. He was sure of assistance from the new Assyrian state which was always looking for an opportunity to push the intruding Aryan Mitanni from their seat. Dushratta fretted and fumed but Shubbiluliuma, not minding him though avoiding contact for reason of his defeat in a former engagement, crossed the Euphrates in force into Naharin, subjugating lands tributary to the Mitanni ruler on the way. He broke all opposition, plundered the country, and carried princes captives to Khatti where he declared: “From the mountain Niblani, from the Euphrates have I made them my territory.”

The revolt continued. Letters and cross-letters followed and slowly and steadily Abdashirta and his son Aziru annexed one fortress after another. It was about this time that Amenhetep III died and was followed by his non-aggressive philosopher son Amenhetep IV. Representations after representations were made by the kings of Babylonia and Mitanni but the peaceful Pharaoh would not move. Aziru crowded the Egyptian officials out from the sphere of his influence and conquests, and after he had killed the Egyptian royal representative Ribadda and the ruler of Beirut, he was summoned to Egypt. He went thither and having made a diplomatic pledge he returned to break it at home by assuming the sceptre. Shubbiluliuma was offended. He had considered Aziru his vassal but the latter’s visit to Egypt and return as an Egyptian sub-king provoked the Hittite to an attack. One of his records shows that he did attack Aziru and compelled him to swear allegiance to him and to obey his commands. The whole of Syria and Phoenicia was lost to Egypt.

Dushratta at this stage was murdered by his own son who could not, however, gain the throne for it was seized
by the late king's exiled brother and rival Artatama and the latter's son Shutarna. "The land of Mitanni was entirely destroyed, and the Assyrians and the people of Alshe divided it between them." Thus Ashur-uballit appropriated at once the portion of the Mitanni kingdom nearest to him and compelled Shutarna to restore the gold and silver door which Saushshatar, the father of Artatama, I had carried, off from Ashur and had set it up in his palace at Washuganni, his capital.

Shubbiluliuma now appeared upon the scene. He says in his epigraph that it was the utter desolation of Mitanni that brought him to help the people of the palace to whom he sent corn and sheep. Mattiuaza, the unnatural son of Dushratta, after being driven by Artatama and his son, had taken refuge at Khatti and was now the protege of its king. To him the king gave his daughter in marriage and, for her sake, now the Mitanni kingdom. He entered Mitanni, drove out the Assyrians and the men of Alshe, and Artatama and Shutarna, and placed Mattiuaza on the throne of Dushratta as his son-in-law and vassal.

Thus Shubbiluliuma's patience and sagacity had been proved to his advantage. He in his old age was now the master of the whole of western Asia including Palestine where Jerusalem had already been captured after the defeat of Aziru. Before his death the great king of Khatti concluded a treaty with the Pharaoh which left him in complete possession of Naharin and Amurru. The stone bearing the record of the treaty was set in an edifice that the king built. Shubbiluliuma died in peace about 1345 B.C.

On the death of the great king his son Arunandia II ruled for a very short time after which the crown passed to the latter's younger brother Mursil II. It was a fairly extensive dominion which he was called upon to lord. It extended from the Phrygian mountains and the Black Sea to the Carmel and Galilee in the south, and to the northern
frontier of Assyria and the mountains of Armenia in the east. Mursil avoided to come in touch with Egypt. Egypt had revived by the advent of a new dynasty. Seti I, the Pharaoh, occupied the uncontested Palestine and proceeded to reassert his claims over the north. He entered Galilee and the Hittites met him there on the field to no disadvantage of Egypt. Seti occupied Phoenicia, where no resistance whatever was offered, and returned to the Delta. After some time Mursil showed signs of invading Phoenicia. Seti returned, advanced from Phoenicia, entered the Orontes valley and invaded Kadesh overthrowing a Hittite army. Mursil never moved south while the prestige of Egypt was restored. Palestine and rich Phoenicia returned to Egyptian control.

Seti gave up the idea of going north, but the proud and impetuous Rameses II was uncontrollable and, despite the two former treaties, resolved to recover the lost conquests of Thothmes III. Mursil advanced to check him with a great confederate host. A sharp battle was fought in which the mobility of the Egyptian army and the youthful impetuosity and valour of Rameses himself got the better of the bulk and numerical superiority of the Hittite force and beat it beyond repair. In the rout that followed several of the foremost Hittite leaders fell, slain by the sword or drowned in the river, before Mursil's eyes. He stood watching on the other bank of the river. The flower of the Hittite army including Mursil's own brother perished.

For the Egyptians it was a great victory and at once, on the return of the victor, sculptors and scribes set to adorn temple-reliefs with a well-earned panegyric. For Mursil the disaster was too great to bear and he soon died crushed by its weight. He was succeeded by his son Mutallu (or Muwatalli) and the new king determined on a vigorous offensive against Egypt in order to retrieve the fallen fortune of his family. He suddenly appeared into Galilee and the
whole of Palestine went over to the Hittites, Phoenicia alone remaining faithful to Egypt. Rameses at once rode his chariot and reconquered the whole of Palestine right up to Dapur in Syria, which was taken after a siege. Rameses followed up his victory with a quick march into Naharin where for a whole century no Egyptian army had been seen. Ktana and Tunip fell, Arvad submitted (c 1290 B.C.), and the fourth successor Aziru abandoning his allegiance to Khatti, declared himself for Egypt. At long last Mutallu recovered both Naharin and Amarru and died about 1285 B.C. He was succeeded by his younger brother Khattusil III.

Khattusil was not so uncompromising as his brother and at once moved for peace with Egypt after restoring Put-akhi, the rebel successor of Aziru, who had been taken prisoner by Mursil to Egypt’s tutelage. Both the parties were exhausted and peace was welcome to them both. A very honourable treaty was signed with elaborate clauses followed by an exchange of congratulatory and affectionate letters between the consorts of the two rulers. We have already referred duly to the contents of the treaty in the Egyptian context.

Khattusil affirmed this treaty after several years with marriage of his daughter to Rameses and he took the princess himself to distant Egypt. Rameses recompensed it by doing him and his nobles great honour and by sending one of his most venerated deities, Khonu of Thebes, to the Hittite court. The god was later sent back to Thebes with numerous precious gifts. Khattusil died a very old man and was succeeded by his son Dudhalia about 1255 B.C.

Not much is known either about him or about his son and successor Arnuanda III except that his mother, the widow of Khattusil, Pudukhipa, was very powerful and held supreme power during her son’s early years. She was mentioned in the documents with Dudhalia as co-regent. Ra-
meses also addressed a personal letter to her. This shows honour in which the queen and queen-mother were held and the important role which they played in the Hittite state. Tawashi, Dudhalia’s queen and Arnuanda’s mother, is likewise mentioned in the records and so also Muni-Dan, ‘the Great Queen’ of Arnuanda, who was at the same time his sister. Perhaps this custom of marrying sister came to be imitated following the friendship with the pharaohs in the usage of Egypt.

Arnuanda was perhaps the last powerful ruler of the Hittite line. The fortunes of the Hittites were on the decline while those of the Assyrians were on the ascendant. The Anatolian rulers were not strong enough to protect their eastern possessions and not a finger was raised when the Assyrian monarch Shalmaneser insolently marched into Syria or when, during Dudhalia’s time, his son Tukulti-Enurta ravaged the eastern provinces or tributary kingdoms of the Hittites. Truly the Hittite sun had set.

5. PETTY NATIONS

About the rise of the Hittites a motley of nations make their appearance on the northern borders of Mesopotamia, who were either Indo-Europeans or Semites. The racial character of some of these cannot be guessed. Some of these were even unsettled nomads who proved a plague to the settled civilizations wherever the land they were roaming failed to provide them food. Among this medley of semi-nomadic tribes may be counted the Cimmerians, Cilicians, Cappadocians, Bithynians, Ashkanians, Mysians, Maonians, Carians, Lycians, Pamphylians, Pisidians, Lycaonians, Philistines, Amorites, Canaanites, Edomites, Ammonites, Moabites and endless unnamed peoples who made their power felt from time to time and then merged into others or disappeared from history.
Of these roaming and settled peoples some were Indo-European, some Semite and some perhaps even of the Mongolian origin. The history of one of the most important and powerful Indo-European nations the Hittites has already been related above. Their great opponents, another branch of the Indo-European family, were the Mitanni who worshipped Indo-Aryan gods—Mitra, Indra, Varuna and Nasatyas—and one of whose tribes the Harri were the first, like the Rigvedic Aryans, to style themselves as Aryan. They had entered the region of the Black Sea and upper Mesopotamia perhaps from the shores of the Caspian Sea. Their mention also has been made while treating of the Hittites. Apart from their prolonged struggle with the Hittites and skirmishes with the Assyrians and their Egyptian overlords the Mitannis did not play much of a part in the politics of western Asia. They appear around the fifteenth century before Christ and disappear from history soon.

To the north of Assyria lies Armenia round the mount of Ararat. There resided a nation called Urartu who maintained their independence for long and kept distinct from rest of their southerly warring nations until they too were drawn into the vortex of struggle by the Assyrians and later the Persians. They mined iron and sold it and thus became rich and ultimately weakened by the Assyrians, they were crushed by the Persians under Kurush (Cyprus).

Along the coast of the Black Sea there “wandered the Scythians, a horde of warriors half Mongol and half European, ferocious bearded giants who lived in wagons, kept their women in purdah, seclusion, rode bare back on wild horses, fought to live and lived to fight, drank the blood of their enemies and used the scalps as napkins, weakened Assyria with repeated raids, swept through western Asia (ca. 630-610 B.C.), destroying and killing everything and every one in their path, advanced to the very cities of the Egyptian Delta, were suddenly decimated by a mysterious dis-
ease, and were finally overcome by the Medes and driven back to their northern haunts.” These were the people who later raided India and there built up great empires. They were called Sakas in India who had already accepted the Iranian culture and had been settled by the Iranian emperors on their north-eastern borders. Indian mercenaries had fought them under the Persian monarchs near the Caspian and Darius I, harassed by the Scythians, had to abandon his northern campaign and the ambition to crush them. They were holding at a time almost the whole of Central Asia from the borders of China to the Black Sea and the region even as far west as the eastern European Danube. They crossed and recrossed that region now beaten now chasing in hot pursuit. Their horses and horsemen have been dug out from the icy sepulchres of the Altai highlands and they are now exhibited—both horse and man—in the Hermitage Museum of Leningrad. Writing about them, Hippocrates says: “Their women, so long as they are virgins, ride, shoot, throw the javelin while mounted, and fight with their enemies. They do not lay aside their virginity until they have killed three of their enemies. . . . . A woman who takes to herself a husband no longer rides, unless she is compelled to do so by a general expedition. They have no right breast; for while they are yet babies their mothers make red-hot a bronze instrument constructed for this very purpose and apply it to the right breast and cauterize it, so that its growth is arrested, and all its strength and built are diverted to the right shoulder and right arm.”

After the fall of Carchemish, the last capital of the Hittites, in 717 B.C. before the Assyrians, there arose a nation called the Phrygians in Asia Minor inheriting much of the Hittite culture. In fact they had been restive much earlier, in the ninth century B.C. About their first king it is said that he had been a farmer owning a bare pair of oxen chosen by the Oracle of Zeus. The Oracle is supposed to
have commanded the Phrygians to choose as their king the first man who rode up to the temple in a wagon and their choice had fallen on the farmer Gordios who happened to pass that way. The famous English expression, the "Gordian knot", is connected with this king of the Phrygians. An oracle had declared that whoever was successful in undoing the intricate knot which held the yoke of the wagon to the pole would conquer the whole of Asia. When Alexander was shown the bark knot and told the legend he cut the 'Gordian knot' with a stroke of his sword.

The second king of the tribe was the Midas, the son of Gordios and famous in the legends. His blessing to turn everything into gold by a touch turned into a curse when even his food turned into the coveted metal and he was deprived of food. Later, it is said, a bath in the river Pactolus restored the human ways to him.

The present capital of Turkey, Ancara, was the capital of the Phrygians who called it Ancyra. The Hittite Ma, the great mother-goddess, became their chief goddess called Cybela (Kybela was the name of the mountain she was supposed to live in), the feminine power that fertilized all the soil. They served the goddess by instituting sacred prostitution at which only emasculated eunuch priests could officiate. Her marrying of Atis formed into a legend and the goddess along with the legend passed into the mythology of the Greeks and the Romans. Lydians damped the power of the Phrygians and ultimately supplanted them.

The Lydian king Gyges ruled from Sardis, his capital, and after Alyattes ruled the famous Croesus (570-546 B.C.) who conquered the whole of Asia Minor and issued, as erstwhile supposed, the first coin of history, which, however, has been discredited now by finds of coins circulating earlier than those issued by him. All the same, he was the first to establish coinage on its face value properly weighed and minted. Croesus later betrayed his country to the Per-
sians and was carried to Persia where he lived as a dandy-
courier and ultimately met a violent death. Croesus, when
king of the Lydians, was considered the richest man in the
world which ancient belief must have rested on his coining
the most valued coins circulating in that age. Herodotus
says that the Lydians were Greeks in every incident of their
culture except that their daughters earned their dowries by
prostitution.

The Indo-Europeans held mostly the north of western
Asia but the rest of it, especially the south was lorded by the
people of the Semitic stock. The Semites were mostly bred
in the desert of Arabia and from there they spread out to
the north and the west. They went out in great numbers,
waves after waves, and Abraham's flock was only one of such
waves which settled down for a time during perhaps the
time of Hammurabi in "Ur of the Chaldees."

The most prominent among the Semites besides the
Hebrew Jews and those who built empires, were the Phoeni-
cians. They also built empires and kingdoms. Those of
Carthage and Tyre became powerful. Hasrubal and Hanni-
ibal later set models of generalship and bravery and the
latter fought great battles in Spain and Italy and conquered
both the Punic Wars from the Romans and led his corps of
elephants through the snows of the Alps. Beaten at the battle
of Zama, he fled to Sicily and Carthage, which was plough-
ed down; pursued he took shelter in a small Greek town
where before being captured he took poison in 190 B.C.
Hiran of Tyre distinguished himself in making his town a
centre of trade.

The genius of Phoenicians lay not in founding states and
building empires but in captaining and organizing the car-
rying trade. They were the greatest traders of the ancient
times. They established garrisons and trade depots in
distant parts of Europe at Cadiz, Carthage and Marseilles,
in Malta, Sicily, Sardinia and Corsica, Cyprus, Melos and
Rhodes which became great cities and colonies. "They made scant distinction between trade and treachery, commerce and robbery; they stole from the weak, cheated the stupid, and were honest with the rest." They traded with all the known world and in all the articles ranging from timber and metals, base and precious, to slaves. Gibbon observes, "Spain, by a very singular fatality, was the Peru and Mexico of the old world. The discovery of the rich western continent by the Phoenicians, and the oppression of the simple natives, who were compelled to labour in their own mines for the benefit of the strangers, form an exact type of the more recent history of Spanish America." The Phoenicians discovered the Cape of Good Hope two thousand years before Vasco da Gama and circumnavigating that southern tip of Africa ploughed the southern seas. They traded with all the countries from India to Germany and had their depots in England too. They have been referred to in the Rigveda too perhaps, as Panis, where the context is rather shady. They are said to be stealing the herds of cattle. Perhaps the reference is made to a condition in which the Aryans and Phoenicians were living as neighbours. They mastered the Mediterranean in the north, south and east and fought the famous Punic wars with the Romans for centuries for the mastery of the trade of that land-locked sea and were worsted in the end.

They lived in the strip of land running along the eastern coast of the Mediterranean a hundred miles long and ten miles wide between the sea and the Lebanese hills. Nobody knows who they were or whence they came. According to the older tradition they came to inhabit what was later called Phoenicia beside Lebanon from the Persian Gulf. Their most important towns were Byblos, supposed to have been founded by the god El at the beginning of time, Tyre, built upon a rocky island off the coast, and Sidon situated on the coast south of Byblos. This town trad-
ed in papyrus with the Greeks and the latter took the name of the town and used for book, biblos, from which the name of the Bible was derived. King Hiram gave its importance to Tyre which became the centre of world trade. The city is said to have "heaped up silver as the dust, and fine gold as the mire of the streets." Sidon helped build Xerxes' fleet; later when the Persians besieged it the townsmen burnt it to the ground. Then they rebuilt it and a fair number of Phoenicians followed Alexander to India for organizing their trade there.

Phoenicians may have been commercial cheats but they carried culture wherever they went. With papyrus they propagated the alphabet, written from right to left. Both the kings Hiram of Tyre and Mesha of Moab wrote in this alphabet which the Phoenicians carried to Greece. The learning of the alphabet by the Greeks is confirmed by Greek traditions. The Greeks turned the side of the writing which they started writing from left to right. From them and the Etruscans the Romans took the alphabet and spread it over the world.

The chief god of the Phoenicians was Baal—meaning syllabically and etymologically, the top one. Every city had its Baal, who was the source of corn and wine. It seems that these people carried this sense of bal, hair, to Indians, who also call an ear of corn baal for it rests on the top of the plant. Throughout it has denoted the top like the Persian balai, the cream on the top of milk, balakhana, the top or the attic room, the Indian balai amadani, the outward illegitimate, over all, gain, balam, the topmost beloved. The Phoenician Ishtar, called Astarte by the Greeks, was the goddess of physical love. The women honouring the goddess at Byblos cut their long tresses and offered them to her or submitted themselves to the first stranger who would care to have his love reciprocated in the campus of the temple. To god Moloch the Phoeni-
cians offered their children as burnt sacrifices. Once during a siege of Byblos in 307 B.C. two hundred boys were burned to death for the favour of that militant and cruel god.

The Syrian Semites too were traders and ran caravans to distant lands. But they also resisted the Egyptians, Babylonians, Assyrians and Persians and other conquering tribes although they succumbed to the might by each of them. Damascus, their capital, they considered the oldest city of the world; one of the oldest it certainly was. In Syria there were regular unions of masons and artisans. Religious prostitution flourished in Syria also as a stimulus to sex leading to the animation and procreation among men, animals and plants. The vernal equinox raised the sexual passion to madness. "The eunuch priests danced wildly, and slashed themselves with knives; at last many men, who had come merely as spectators, were overcome with the excitement, threw off their clothing, and emasculated themselves in pledge of lifelong service to the goddess." El or Ilu was another god of the Syrians but the worship of Baal as sun and of Astarte as moon in Syria too had the upper hand. There too children were offered in sacrifice and their cries while burning were drowned in the blare of the trumpets.

6. ASSYRIA AND BABYLONIA

Although Naharin and Mitanni formed part of the Hittite empire the Khatti kings never attempted to conquer Assyria. It was good for the Hittites to keep their hands off the realm for the attempt would have proved too costly against the tried valour of the Assyrian soldiery. Babylonia had passed under the tutelage of Assyria since Kurgalzu had been placed on the throne of Babylon by his Assyrian grandfather. The young prince had, however, developed great power and was fast bringing distinction to his
new house. He had already warred with Elamites, captured their king, sacked the capital, Susa, and brought great spoil back home. Slowly he endeavoured to get out of control of the Assyrian monarchs and at least was able to loosen their grip on him. Adad-nirari, however, turned out an ambitious ruler and asserted his right of suzerainty over Babylonia. A pitched engagement followed and the old Babylonian beat the Assyrian forces in the field and compelled his cousin to respect his frontier which he drew afresh. After his death Adad-nirari attacked his successor to retrieve his prestige but the old frontiers, any way, were reaffirmed.

Adad-nirari was succeeded by a very energetic son, Shalmaneser I. His ambition could not restrain him to keep to the old frontiers and he resolved to extend his domain. He ascended the Tigris right up to its source and entered the valley of the Euphrates compelling North Syrian and the adjacent territories to pay tribute. Later he conquered Mitanni after defeating the Hittite sub-king and slaughtering his combined Hittite and Syrian forces 'like sheep.'

The Hittite monarch Khattusil at once opened friendly relations with Assyria's Babylonian enemy Kadashtan-turgu and later compelled the Babylonian officials to give the throne to his son Kadashtan-Enlil after the king's death. The death of Kadashtan-turgu can be dated to about 1284 B.C. which would place the chronology of Shalmaneser I also within the reach of understanding.

Kadashtan-Enlil II could not remain on the throne for long and six years after his accession he was brought to an end either by murder at home, where a party had risen that preferred the collateral Assyrian control to the Hittite tutelage, or by Shalmaneser in battle.

Kashililiashu, the third successor of Kadashtan-Enlil II, was strongly anti-Assyrian, whom the energetic son of
Shalmaneser, Tukulti-Enurta I, defeated and deposed, thus expanding the dominions of Assyria. He took the throne himself and ruled over both the kingdoms as a single state for seven years from about 1248 to about 1241 B.C. This was done in the face of the Hittites, the Babylonian ally, which set seal to the Khatti influence in that direction. At the same time Assyria ascended a status of equality with Khatti.

But the Babylonians could not stand this subjugation and soon became restive. They revolted vigorously and brought the rule of Tukulti-Enurta to an abrupt close. On the throne of Babylonia they placed Adad-shum-usur, son of the deposed king. Tukulti-Enurta suffered in this manner in Babylonia, at home a more cruel fate awaited him at the hands of his unnatural son. Ashur-nasir-pal, his son, assisted by Assyrian nobles revolted against the authority of Tukulti-Enurta, deposed him, "besieged him in a house in the city of Kar-Tukultienurta, and cut him down with the sword."

Tukulti-Ashur succeeded Ashur-nasir-pal I after his very brief rule in Assyria. We know nothing about him beyond the fact that he restored the image of Marduk, six years after it had been carried off, to Babylon as this sacrilege had been supposed to be the cause of the Assyrian misfortune. Then there followed the reigns of numerous rulers fighting sometimes among themselves, sometimes with the kings of Babylonia. Ultimately Enlil-kudur-usur of Assyria and Adad-shum-usur of Babylon closed in combat and both fell fighting each other (c. 1211 B.C.). Babylonia was the victor.

Melishipak II ascended the throne of Babylon and followed up the victory of his father with an invasion of Assyria. He perhaps conquered the country and put it under the control of his son, Marduk-apal-iddina, who had fought by the side of his father and shared his victory. Father
and son ruled respectively for fifteen and thirteen years, one after the other. We hear of an Assyrian king after years, only when Ashurdan defeats Ilbaba-shum-iddina, the successor of Marduk-apal-iddina (c. 1183 B.C.) and restores the Assyrian kingdom to its old limits adding to it part of Babylonian territory.

The Kassite dynasty came to an end after its last king Enlil-nadin-akhe died or was murdered about 1180 B.C. A new dynasty, native of Babylonia now, took charge of the affairs of the land and for a time peace prevailed between the two nations.

Assyria had been in a bad way for some time due to the press of danger from the west. Anatolians had been ousted from their own land beyond the Taurus by new European tribes and were in their turn pressing hard against the western provinces of Assyria which they soon appropriated, thus putting an end to the conquests of Tukulti-Enurta. This happened about the time when the Assyrian monarchs had been supplanted by the Babylonian dynasty.

A few generations later Assyria revived and during the rule of Ashur-rish-ishi expeditions were undertaken against the northern tribes and war was declared on Babylonia. The new dynasty of Babylon had set on its throne an energetic king, Nebuchadnezzar I. He had waged a successful war against Elam but Assyria made matters hot for him. In North-western Mesopotamia, in the valley of Euphrates near the mouth of the Khabur, where the marches of the Hittite empire had met those of Babylonia for centuries, the conflict opened. The armies of Babylonia and Assyria met and fought an engagement in which the Babylonians were worsted with considerable loss. Nebuchadnezzar was not present. This defeat, however, compelled him to cede most of the territory in the valley of Upper Euphrates to Assyria. Over this western part Babylon had exercised a nominal control in the absence of the effective supremacy of either Egypt or the Hittites.
But Assyria could not permit even this nominal control of Babylonia to last any longer. In fact during the next reign, i.e., in the reign of Tiglath-pileser I, a bid for world-power was made by her. Tiglath-pileser moved with vigour against Babylonia. The latter withdrew leaving all her western possessions to the Assyrian conqueror. Twice he reduced her to a state of vassalage and took for himself the sobriquet, King of Sumer and Akkad. Tiglath-pileser proved his metal in the north as well, for he crowded the new Anatolian settlers out of the Upper Euphrates valley. Next he subdued Shubari, overran Nahrin, west of Euphrates, conquered the Hittite principality of Musri nearer home, and finally penetrated beyond Taurus, the unknown land of the Hittites. There he burnt down the city of Khunusa and sowed its site with salt. The royal city of Kibshuna was likewise taken and destroyed. He carried his arms right up to the coast of the Black Sea, a rare mark of distinction.

7. THE ASSYRIAN EMPIRE

Soon after the events narrated above Assyria sank to the state of a third rate power following the depredations of Aramaean invaders. Much of her territory was gone and the blank of a century followed. The veil was lifted by Tiglath-pileser II, a contemporary of Solomon and of Shishak, but of him also we know only from an inscription of his grandson, Adad-nirari II. Adad-nirari, who died in the year 889 B.C., left a prosperous kingdom to his son Tukulti-Enurta II.

Tukulti-Enurta II was an exceptionally energetic king and showed signs of a great conqueror in making early through his successful northern campaigns, but his career was terminated by death in 884 B.C. Before passing on to subsequent events a fact of world importance must be mentioned. From the time of Adad-nirari II the list of the limmi
or eponymous magistracies of the years came to be kept without omission till the close of the Assyrian empire. With the help of this list the exact dates of most of the chief events in Assyrian history can be fixed without the possibility of error. With Adad-nirari II we touch upon the sheet-anchor of Assyrian chronology.

Ashur-nasir-pal

Tukulti-Enurta II was succeeded by his son Ashur-nasir-pal II, who ruled from 884 to 859 B.C. Ashur-nasir-pal was one of the greatest conquerors of ancient times. Assyria under him became the arbiter of the destiny of nations. An unprecedented zeal of military activities sprang forth and the conquests of Tiglath-pileser were restored in no time. This monarch was ruthless and cruel and to his resisters he was absolutely unsparing and unrelenting. He exulted in torturing his conquered enemies. His usual method of treating the vanquished was to burn their city and to cut off the hands and ears and to put out the eyes of all grown up men. Then they were piled up to die a death of torture and starvation. All children, boys and girls, were burnt alive at the stake, and the conquered chiefs were carried off to Assyria to be flayed alive. Provinces were depopulated, Sometimes the inhabitants carried to other provinces and thus population, where not exterminated by ruthless massacre and inhuman tortures, was exchanged in order to annihilate the chances of rebellion. The standards of inhumanity set by Ashur-nasir-pal were maintained by subsequent Assyrian conquerors also throughout the history of the land although no instances of the burning of children are on record. This was a peculiar pleasure of this ruler who was a monster even in those days of monstrous cruelty.

The army had its corps of standing troops but usually during the war time all able-bodied men were mobilized. It was mostly in the bowmen that the strength of the Assyrian
army lay. The infantry with its long arrows put the chario-
teers completely out of action and carried the field. Cha-
riots were becoming outmoded. Assyrians were the ori-
ginators of military engineering. Their main contribution
to the military science was the siegecraft. The comman-
der-in-chief of Assyrian forces was called turtan.

Ashur-nasir-pal first advanced against the mountain
tribes of the east and north. He worked havoc with his
sword and fire through southern Armenia to Commagene
and Cilicia. The conqueror pressed along the river with
lightning speed. Two Aramaean states were overthrown
and destroyed. Sukhi, despite Babylonian support, was
ruined, and the southern Hittite kingdom with its capital at
Carchemish subdued (876 B.C.). Then the conqueror
crossed the Euphrates, marched through Northern Syria to
the Orontes, crossed it descending down to the sea and thus
entering the Lebanon, and received the submission of the
Phoenician cities. The Syrian king of Damascus was para-
lysed by the swiftness of the Assyrian operations. Ashur-
nasir-pal then turned back to the Euphrates and completed
the circle by marching through the upper valley of the Tigris
back to where he had begun. And the devastation was
so thorough, the ruin so complete, the overthrow of king-
doms so sudden that no opposition or resistance could be
possible anywhere, and the route of the conquering armies
—a trail of burning villages, a sea of massacred humanity.

Ashur-nasir-pal was also an uncommon organizer of
state. He organized it on a military footing and moved his
capital from the ancient Ashur to Kalkhi (Calah) which
had been founded by Shalmaneser I but had lain abandon-
ed for centuries. From that barrack-like town he ruled his
empire.

There he built his palaces and temples. And in that
regard the great militarist was exceptionally brilliant. He
was an uncommon builder. He employed sculptors and
architects to erect his temples and palaces who had no parallels anywhere in that world and his buildings became at once the models and the despair of subsequent emulators in the neighbouring states. He died in 859 B.C., a feared man, and after a dazzling rule for twenty-five years left his extensive empire to his worthy son Shalmaneser III, equally successful in his military campaigns and in the organization and administration of the state.

Shalmaneser III

Shalmaneser began by intimidating the conquered states so that the change of masters might not give them hopes of freedom. After completely destroying and suppressing the tributary kingdoms he moved south to strike terror and to subdue principalities.

A great battle was fought in 853 B.C., at Karkar where Ahab of Israel, Irkhuleni of Hamath and Benhadad II of Damascus confederated and led their combined hosts to give battle to the Assyrian emperor. Benhadad was the most formidable of the enemies that the Assyrians had thus far met. The battle was indecisive although the Assyrians claimed a victory. But they too retreated immediately and Benhadad was left undisturbed in the possession of his realm. The Syrian losses were great and the allies dispersed carrying considerable rancour against one another which set the background for a war among them. Five years later Shalmaneser returned to wreak vengeance on Damascus. He was again balked by the fierce resistance of the Syrian monarch. Three years later in 845 B.C. Shalmaneser, furious at his failure, put a hundred and twenty thousand men in the field and yet he could not break the resistance of the redoubtable Syrian. The dogged persistence of the Assyrian invader was met with redoubled vigour and Shalmaneser had to abandon his plan of subduing Syria for the moment. He instead consolidated his power in North Syria
and completed the submission of the Phoenician cities (842 B.C.).

In that year Benhadad II was murdered. It was time for Shalmaneser to act. Both Syria and Israel were weakened by war and their new kings were not settled firmly. Shalmaneser marched south in the next year. Hazael, the successor of Benhadad, met him on the slope of Hermon, was defeated and driven back to Damascus. The territory was ravaged by the Assyrians although the capital defied them and could not be taken. Jehu, the new king of Judah, sent rich presents and this incident, construed as a show of frailty, was commemorated on an obelisk of black stone, set in the royal palace at Calah.

Shalmaneser when foiled in Syria sought his compensation in the direction of the Taurus. Subjection of the tribes in that area was firmly established and Cilicia was perfectly conquered. But the greater recompense came from Babylonia. In the interim there had been considerable turmoil in Babylonia. Chaldaean tribes took possession of Babylon for a time and were followed, first by an Elamite usurper, and then, by a native dynasty whose two kings were later defeated by Adad-nirari II. Later, Babylonia became friendly to Assyria except for a momentary enmity in which she had helped Sukhi which was conquered by Ashur-nasir-pal. The Babylonian contemporary of Shalmaneser, Marduk-zakir-shum, worried by the revolt of his brother, called in the aid of the Assyrian emperor. Shalmaneser invaded Babylonia, defeated the rebels in two engagements, drove out the Chaldaeans, and reduced the intimidated Babylonian to the status of a vassal. This assured the Babylonians their commercial gains while the Assyrians achieved their suzerainty over Babylonia. Henceforth only ambitious princes of the land sometimes rose against the Assyrian supremacy, but the great bulk of the
merchants of Babylon were always a bulwark of support to Assyria.

Shalmaneser had accomplished a lot by now and wanted to be relieved from leading forces to battle-field. He left therefore his command to his *turtaan*, Ashur-dayan. Shamshi-Adad, a younger son, was made the crown-prince. In 827 B.C. Ashur-daninpal, the elder brother, revolted against his father and brother, and carried with him the greater part of the kingdom including Nineveh and Assur. But the capital, Calah, with its military headquarters, remained faithful to Shalmaneser and Shamshi-Adad. Ashur-daninpal held on. But on the death of his father in 824 B.C. Shamshi-Adad V ascended the throne of Assyria. The civil war terminated two years later. During this time both Hamath and Babylonia had revolted. Shamshi-Adad at once invaded the latter and crushed the Babylonian monarch Marduk-balatu-ikbi in the battle of Dur-Papsukal, thus disbanding the confederacy of the Babylonians with the Elamite and Chaldaean hirelings. After inflicting this disaster on Babylonia Shamshi-Adad died in 811 B.C. During the interim following the death of Shalmaneser the queen mother Sammuramat, Semiramis of the Greek legends whom Diodorus calls half-goddess and half queen, great general, engineer and statesman, ruled ably for three years. She is supposed to have planned to invade and conquer India.

**Decline of Assyria**

Adad-nirari III, son of Shamshi-Adad, too returned to Syria after subduing the tribes of the North. Benhadad III, son of Hazael, was compelled to pay tribute to Assyria for the first time. Jehoahaz, king of Israel, broke loose from Syria and paid tribute to Adad-nirari. Hamath and Phoenician cities resumed their payments of the annuity.
The records say that the Assyrian monarch was able to exact tribute even from Edom and Palestine.

Jehoash of Israel emerged successful in the political confusion of Palestine and turned against Syria. He recovered the entire territory of Israel east of the Jordan and his son Jeroboan turned out to be so vigorous that he even took Damascus and Hamath. The Assyrians were slowly losing ground.

About the same time an important kingdom of Urartu (Ararat), where the Ararat Mountain is situated, was rising into prominence. The kingdom was called Kaldia after the chief god Kaldis of the people of Urartu. The tribe was very warlike and lived in the highlands of Armenia towards the Caucasus and the Assyrian monarchs had to undertake repeated expeditions to keep their restive leaders to their own bounds. Babylonian culture had spread among them and later the princes of the tribe came to use the cuneiform writing. Their restive character gave the western and southern enemies of Assyria some relief as no more could the Assyrian armies keep long on punitive expeditions for the fear of their formidable upland neighbours.

In the meanwhile Assyria plunged into a civil war. A number of cities revolted following the total solar eclipse of 763 B.C. which was accepted as an ill-omen and a signal for change. The centre of the revolt was Assur, the old capital, and the king was murdered. Internecine war and pestilence ravaged the land. At last in 758 Adadnirari IV, the successor of Ashurdan, succeeded in suppressing the revolt. Simultaneously with Assur, Babylonia also revolted against the authority of Assyria and Nabushum-ishkun restored the old kingdom. When he died in 748 B.C. and his son Nabunaisir (Nabonassar) succeeded him a new era, that of expansion, started in Babylonia. The affairs of Assyria, however, went from bad to worse and in 746, following the revolt of Calah, the Assyrian general
Pulu ascended the throne of Assyria and the old dynasty came to an end.

**Revival; Tiglath-pileser**

Pulu took the name of Assyria’s greatest warrier Tiglath-pileser (745-727 B.C.). The name of Tiglath-pileser III, therefore, was one of great promise suggestive of renewed glory and revived empire. And the implied promise came true. New blood infused new life and the west and south readily submitted.

He entered the northern part of Babylonia not at all meaning to depose its king but only to intimidate the land into dependence. Now thus securing Assyria against Babylonia and the Aramaeian hordes, Tiglath-pileser marched against Syria. The chief of Syria, getting alarmed, confederated with the king of Urartu, Sarduris III, who marched down the Euphrates to attack the flank of the Assyrian army. Tiglath-pileser wheeled round and struck Sarduris, completely defeating him. After a few engagements the West submitted.

Azaria, the overlord of the dependencies of Israel, was perhaps the main instigator of the resistance in Southern Syria. In a couple of years (739-38) Tiglath-pileser, campaigning in the Armenian mountains, beat the enemy and broke the confederacy as also the dream of Azaria of recreating a Solomonic empire. Kullani, Hamath, Samal fell one after another and Damascus, Tyre and part of Israel paid tribute to the invader. Azaria died and was succeeded by Jotham.

Then the conqueror appeared in the north and campaigning across Media reached the foot of Demavena, and through Urartu, Lake Van on whose shore Turushpa, capital of Sarduris, lay. He could not take the citadel but certainly made his power felt. In the meanwhile he received an appeal from Judah, now threatened by its old dependencies
in Southern Syria and Israel, which he answered by appearing in Syria after the destruction of Urartu. He marched down to the hitherto unconquered Philistia, not conquered even during the days of Solomon. Hanun of Gaza fled to Egypt. A statue of Tiglath-pileser was set up in his palace and sacrifices were offered to Ashur in his temples, while all the gods and the royal treasure were carried off to Assyria. Israel submitted and all the land east of the Jordan, Galilee and Naphtali with a number of towns were annexed by the conqueror. Hard was the lot of Damascus. The city was taken, its king killed, territory annexed and its people carried captive to Kir. Tyre sent loads of riches and, Ammon, Moab, and Edom accepted the Assyrian tutelage. Lands right up to the frontiers of Egypt—Philistia, the whole of Palestine and Syria north of Galilee and east of the Jordan, with the exception of Phoenicia—were annexed and governors appointed over them. About half the population in each state was carried into captivity making place for captives from Armenia and elsewhere.

Babylonia had given no trouble but its own disturbed state gave Tiglath-pileser an opportunity to annex the state. Following internal political disaffection, a Chaldaean chief had taken possession of the country and the merchants asked for Assyrian help. In 731 the conqueror entered Babylonia and subdued the entire country down to the shore of the Persian Gulf by the year 728 and took its crown for himself. He died in the following year. Tiglath-pileser thus built up and ruled an empire extending from Caucasus to Egypt with an iron hand, erected numerous temples and palaces and died peacefully in bed.

During the reign of Shalmaneser V (727-722 B.C.), his successor, Egypt showed great unrest. Important changes had taken place in Egyptian politics and the pharaoh Piankhi had appointed his son Shabaka the regent and commander-in-chief of the North. The Assyrian annexation
of Palestine was resented and the young Egyptian prince, not knowing the Assyrian power and ruthlessness, sought to try conclusions with the latter. As a result and relying on Egyptian support Tyre and Israel refused to pay the annual tribute to Assyria. Shalmaneser struck quickly at the rebels and Tyre submitted forthwith; the land of Israel was overrun and laid waste. Egypt did not interfere. Hoshea, the king of Israel, was blinded and his entire country annexed. Shortly before this Shalmaneser was murdered and Sargon ascended the throne of Assyria.

**Sargon II (722-705 B.C.)**

Sargon II, the new emperor, risen from the ranks, had to forget the West for the moment as events nearer home had to be his first concern and they were fairly important as the Aramaean and Chaldaean tribes had made another bid for power. The Chaldaean chief Marduk-pal-iddina, supported by the Elamite king Khumbanigash, who had got jealous of the Assyrian power and its encroachments on his rear, entered Mesopotamia in 721 and laid siege to the fortress of Dur-ilu, on the Lower Tigris. Sargon who proceeded to its relief was beaten by the Elamites before its walls and was compelled to beat a retreat. Marduk-pal-iddina ascended the throne of Babylon.

Taking advantage of the Assyrian reverse the West revolted with the support of Shabaka. Leaving the affairs of Babylonia where they were, Sargon hastened west, defeated the leader of Damascus at Karkar and the combined Philistines and Egyptians on their country’s border, exacting tribute from Egypt and Arabian kingdoms. Israel he punished by carrying into captivity the very flower of the nation, twenty-seven thousand two hundred and ninety, and settled them in Gozan and distant Media, filling their place by a mixed horde of Syrian and Babylonian prisoners, who toge-
ther with the remnant of Israel formed the laterly Samaritans.

Now Sargon turned to the north-west leaving Babylonia free with its new master. The tribes of the west had turned restive with the support of Rusas of Urartu and Mita of Mushki. This Mita was perhaps the lord of the Phrygians who had extended their domain up to the Taurus and mingled with the Anatolian Hittites. He is supposed by some to have been the mythical Midas at whose touch all things turned to gold. A small state of Mannai between Armenia and Media had been created by Tiglath-pileser IV largely composed of deported tribes from Western Asia. Its rulers swayed between Rusas and Sargon during the long years of unrest. Rusas deposed the ruler for he submitted to Sargon and set up the Median prince Daiukku as king of Mannai. Sargon deposed him and deported him to Hamath (715) and, following his reverses, Rusas killed himself in despair. Midas likewise had incited the Hittite princes to revolt. Carchemish, the seat of Hittite kingdom, was annexed in 717. The Hittite rulers in the mountains were next subdued. No conclusions could be tried with Midas for he was too far away although the Assyrian governor of Cilicia reported successes (715) on the western frontier against him.

In the meanwhile Shabaka had become king in Egypt and his instigation started bearing fruit in the shape of revolt in the South and West. In 715 Ashdod revolted but its leader was captured and sent to Assyria in chains. Judah likewise rebelled and submitted. Now after settling accounts that end and not at all intending to enter the unknown land of the Nile, Sargon turned to Babylonia, drove its Chaldaean king into Chaldaea, and took the throne of Babylon for himself in 709. Then after subjugating his original home along the sea he exchanged its population with that of Samaria and the Hittites of Kommagene. At his imperial feast that followed the conqueror received among others the gift-bearing
ambassadors from Midas, now desirous of peace, and tribut-es from the seven kings of the island of Cyprus who had ac-cepted the overlordship of Assyria as early as 715. Now except for a few disaffections the empire was quiet and ter-ritories directly under Assyrian control were being govern-ed by Assyrian officials. Thus the dominions of Sargon ex-tended from Cilicia to the Persian Gulf.

Sargon was one of the greatest builders of the Assyrian dynasty. He built numerous temples and palaces at Dur-Sharrukin (Khorsabad) to a little north of Nineveh. The excavations of Khorsabad have brought to light brilliant pieces of architecture and sculpture and a whole corridor full of reliefs running round a central ziggurat-temple. Sar-gon had come to believe in a number of gods as against his predecessors, who were the adorers of a single all-powerful god Ashur, and he installed their images in the new temples he built for them. In his own new palaces he could not live for more than two years for he died in 705 B.C. leaving his extensive possessions to his son Sin-akhi-irba, better known to us as Sennacherib.

Sennacherib (705—681 B.C.)

Sennacherib was neither shrewd nor farseeing like his father. He pursued his campaigns with vanity and they were chronicled and inscribed on clay cylinders and deposit-ed in the royal library, a custom closely followed by his successors. He is said in one of his epigraphs to have "sack-ed 89 cities and 820 villages, captured 7,200 horses, 11,000 asses, 80,000 oxen, 800,000 sheep, and 208,000 prisoners."

The Median conquests of Sargon fell away and Mardu-kpal-iddina, with Elamite help, fell again, a third time, on Babylon. Sennacherib expelled him by defeating his Ela-mite supporters and set up a native Babylonian of the old royal house, thus abandoning his own claims to Babylonia
which had been ruled by two of his predecessors as its kings. Then the king had to turn to west for revolts had broken out there on the instigation of Egypt. Luli of Sidon had imposed his authority over all Phoenicia and Hezekiah of Judah over Philistia. In Ashkelon and Ekron kings had been deposed. Sennacherib drove Luli across the sea and Phoenicia submitted. Philistia was likewise subdued with a strong hand. Shabaka sent an army to the help of the Palestinians when the Assyrian monarch moved towards the borders of Egypt but the latter beat the Egyptian forces at Eltekeh. All arrangements in the land were now made as Sennacherib wanted. The whole territory was ravaged and more than two hundred thousand people were taken as spoils. Soon the monarch returned home. The siege of Jerusalem was continued by his officials while the king Hezekiah held out heroically within. Then a compromise was accepted and the Assyrians raised the siege. Hezekiah foolishly admitted ambassadors from the Babylonian pretender Marduk-pal-iddina for which the Prophet Isaiah rebuked him. Sennacherib, this time determined to put an end to the pretender, hounded him out of Babylonia and from his original home in Bit-Yakin, and forced him to take refuge in the Elamite territory while he placed his own son Ashurnadinshum on the throne of Babylon after deposing his puppet-king Bel-ibni. In 693 B.C. Sennacherib fitted out a flotilla and embarked on it with his army down the course of Euphrates and reached the sea. The Elamite coast was ravaged and the fugitive Chaldaeans with their gods and Elamite prisoners were sent captives in hundreds to Assyria. This was to catch Marduk-pal-iddina who disappeared from the scene, whether dead or alive we do not know. Furious at this spoliation of his coastal territory the Elamite king at once invaded Babylonia and captured both Sippar and Sennacherib’s son, its ruler, and carried the latter home setting up his own nominee on the throne of Babylon. Sen-
nacherib at once moved into Babylonia and carried this Elamite nominee off to Assyria. He then attached Elam but to no purpose. In the meanwhile the Babylonians set up their own king and when Sennacherib returned, they bribed the new Elamite king Ummanminanu and summoned his help, and he came. A great battle was fought at Khaluli on the Tigris and most glowing tributes were paid to the Assyrian monarch's prowess and victory was claimed in his records for him. But, in fact, the field lay with the Elamites and the Assyrians had to withdraw to Assyria although the Elamite general was killed in the battle and the son of Sennacherib freed. The Babylonian king also could not be touched.

Sennacherib awaited the death of the Elamite Ummanminanu and, after it had occurred, he appeared before Babylon, captured and burnt down the city and carried its king and god Marduk to Assyria. Its population too was expelled. During the last eight years of his reign we hear of no military expeditions but of one against the Arabs. The king's chronicles do not record the event, it is given by his son's chroniclers.

Sennacherib too, like his father, was a great builder and built numerous palaces and temples at Nineveh. Nineveh had become a mighty capital. He says in his inscription that he did everything to beautify Nineveh which his forefathers had neglected. He straightened its roads, built plantations and a proper wall. About the labour utilized he writes in his own inscription: "The people of Chaldaea, the Aramaeans, the Mannai, the men of Kue and Cilicia, the Phoenicians and Tyrians who had not submitted to my yoke, I carried away, and I set them to forced labour, and they made bricks." The double walls ran round double the area of the city and were pierced by fifteen gates, each bearing a distinct name, as did the walls themselves, and beautiful gardens were laid outside the habitat within the walls which
were watered by numerous aqueducts constructed from springs in the hills north of Nineveh. The king had vouched that he would make of Nineveh a better city than Babylon. Certainly he was able to prove his boast as he had laid the ancient city waste and there was none to compare its glory with one he had built and beautified.

But his end also came early after this and that too a violent one. The Bible puts it clearly: “And it came to pass, as he was worshipping in the house of Nisroch his god, that Adrammelech and Sharezer his sons smote him with the sword: and they escaped into the land of Armenia. And Esarhaddon his son reigned in his stead.” He was praying when he was thus murdered. The god heard his prayer but the weight of justice compelled him to decree his favour elsewhere and to lay hands on the real culprit.

**Esarhaddon (681—669 B.C.)**

Esarhaddon (Ashur-akh-iddina) was the youngest of Sennacherib’s four sons and came to the throne in 681 B.C. after the murder of his father. He was away in the provinces when his father met his violent death and he hastened home on getting the news to capture the throne and avenge Sennacherib. Six weeks later he had expelled the parricides from Nineveh, pursued and beat them, although he could not get them for they fled to the king of Urartu. Esarhaddon ascended the ancestral throne formally in 680 B.C.

The first act of the king was to make amends to one of his father’s grave wrongs. He re-built Babylon which his father had razed to the ground. Within three years the city was rehabilitated and its captive gods were restored. The Chaldaeans were thus chased away and the people won over. The result was that when the ex-Chaldaean king’s son tried to revolt he was beaten back and the Elamite king, who invaded Babylonia and took Sippar, was likewise thrown out by the hostile mob. A wise man, very unlike his father,
had come to rule the people and his statesmanship bore fruit. He reconciled the people of Elam by feeding them when they were striken by famine, an act of benevolence never known in that blood-thirsty world. He was left free to strike against the tribes of the North and to mature his plan to conquer Egypt. The Cimmerians and the Treres were pressing from the north-west and the northern tribes became restive. Set in motion, the Mannai, the Medes and the Scythians invaded Assyria. But Esarhaddon beat them back by sowing seeds of dissension among them. This was done by marrying an Assyrian princess to Bartatua, a Scythian chieftain, and setting him against Spaka, the king of that tribe.

Now Esarhaddon was free to settle accounts with Egypt. Due to the latter's intrigues the west had stirred. During his punitive expedition the king demolished the walls of Sidon (677) and beheaded its king. The Cilician king met the same fate. Phoenicia submitted. Ten kings of Cyprus paid homage and Palestine sent assurances of loyalty. Across Palestine Esarhaddon marched into Egypt little knowing that Egyptians differed from the Assyrians in language, race, religion, in everything, that to the commonest Egyptian the rule of a Hyksos would be hateful, that even though conquered, Egypt could not be held by mere sword, and that the only way to hold her was to sit on her throne and accept her gods as did the Persians, Kambujiya and Darius, who both conquered and held her. In 671 Esarhaddon conquered Egypt. The Pharaoh fled the field of battle after defeat and the Assyrian monarch followed up his victory by investing Memphis, the inhabitants of which city had paid with life for their gallant resistance. After making Egypt an Assyrian province he amazed western Asia with his triumphant march from Memphis to Nineveh bringing home with him enormous booty. He made assyria most prosperous and master of the world. Esarhaddon returned to Assyria setting up stelae of victory on the way. The
Pharaoh Tirhakah at once returned to Memphis and massacred the Assyrian garrisons. Esarhaddon moved back but was taken ill and died on the way (669). He had already made a will that on his death his elder son, Ashurbanipal, should rule at Nineveh, and that the younger one, Shamash-shum-ukin, should hold Babylon under the control of his elder brother. Matters were settled as decreed. He had given his people a very just and kindly rule wholly unknown in those barbarous times.

**Ashurbanipal (669-626)**

Ashurbanipal was a great conqueror and the last great ruler of a most powerful family of kings. He ruled for about half a century and his reign was full of events. His first act was to return to Egypt to punish the Pharaoh. He defeated that king at Karbanit, occupied Memphis without a blow and sailed up-stream to Thebes. The story is told elsewhere, in the context of Egypt, as to how he dealt with the princes of that land. On his return all his conquest was undone in Egypt and he undertook a punitive expedition in person. He reached Thebes mercilessly suppressing opposition and destroying and burning the cities on the way. Thebes met the same cruel fate and all its glory was gone. While on his way back home Ashurbanipal completely subjugated Phoenicia and received an embassy from far-off Lydia across the seas. Assyrian prestige had reached its apogee.

Elam appears next on Ashurbanipal's list of conquests. Elam had invaded Babylonia and thus had given the Assyrian monarch an opportunity to make an end of it. The eponym-lists break off about this time and our information about the course of events becomes somewhat defective after the year 666 B.C. The Elamite king was marching on Nineveh but on the approach of the Assyrian army he retreated to the mountains pursued by Ashurbanipal's forces. He was driven back to Susa and at Tulliz on the river Ula
a pitched battle was fought in which the Elamite king Te-Umman was killed. The territory was diminished and given to Ashurbanipal’s nominee. The event was commemorated on a frieze. Ashurbanipal gives his own account of his ruthless conquest of Elam as bloody as any and worse in the history of the world: “For a distance of one month and twenty-five days’ march I devastated the districts of Elam. I spread salt and thorn-bush there (so that the fecundity of the soil may be destroyed). Sons of the kings, sisters of the kings, members of Elam’s royal family, young and old, prefects, governors, knights, artisans, as many as there were, inhabitants male and female, big and little, horses, mules, ashes, flocks and herds more numerous than a swarm of locusts—I carried them off as booty to Assyria. The dust of Susa, of Madaktu, of Haltemash and of their other cities, I carried it off so Assyria. In a month of days I subdued Elam in its whole extent. The voice of man, the steps of flocks and herds, the happy shouts of mirth—I put an end to them in its fields which left for the asses, the gazelles, and all manner of wild beasts to people.” Ashurbanipal’s barbaric execution of the Elamite king and his general has been related elsewhere. In one instance, he says, “all the chiefs who had revolted I flayed, with their skins I covered the pillar, some in the midst I walled up, others on stakes I impaled, still others I arranged around the pillars on stakes..... As for the chieftains and royal officers who had rebelled I cut off their members.” He confirms his boasts by quoting instances. “I burned three thousand captives with fire, I left not a single one among them alive to serve as a hostage.”

“These warriors,” continues he in another inscription, “who had sinned against Ashur and had plotted evil against me..... from their hostile mouths have I torn their tongues, and I have compassed their destruction. As for the others who remained alive, I offered them as a funerary sacrifice;
...their lacerated members have I given unto the dogs, the swine, the wolves." This can be matched, if at all, by an Assyrian monarch's exploit alone. Says another, "My war chariots crush men and beasts... The monuments which I erect are made of human corpses from which I have cut the head and limbs."

In 652 an important event happened which, if things had been successfully organized, would have become a danger of great force. It was the rebellion of Shamash-shum-ukin, the brother-king of Ashurbanipal, who had the charge of Babylonia. He organized a big conspiracy with the rulers of Elam and those of Palestine and Phoenicia. Fortunately for his brother the matter leaked out and the revolt had to be attempted before the plans were mature. The conspiracy aimed at making the king of Babylonia the master of both the states. He rebelled, and so did the king of Elam. The Chaldaeans appeared with Merodach-baladan's grandson as their leader and took Ur and Uruk. The Elamite king was murdered in his camp, by his own son. Ashurbanipal moved into Babylonia with a formidable army, blockaded Sippar, Kuth and Babylon. Shamash-shum-ukin set fire to his palace and perished in the flames for he knew that otherwise, when apprehended, his fate would be still worse. Ashurbanipal placed a nobleman Kandalanu on the Babylonian throne and marched into Elam. Susa was captured and completely destroyed and the statue of the goddess Nina, which had been carried to Elam 1635 years back, was restored to its temple at Uruk. The Chaldaean chief committed suicide and the king of Elam was carried captive. Elam disappeared from history.

Next the emperor turned to his western rebels. The Arabs were the first to encounter. But before the Assyrian army could achieve much they joined hands with others and the entire country from Edom to Damascus was in revolt. But the leader of the Arabs, Uaite, was defeated and
carried captive to Nineveh where he and his wife were extremely ill-treated. Most of the rebel kings met the same fate. About the same time the Cimmerian hordes moved eastwards across the Taurus and were defeated by the Assyrian army in Syria. They retreated northward. The king of Lydia sent an embassy to Ashurbanipal to congratulate him on this event. In 635 B.C. Ashurbanipal celebrated a triumph at Nineveh during which he drove his chariot to the temple of Ishtar to the yoke of which were harnessed the kings who had been defeated and brought as captives. The king of Egypt was conspicuous by his absence for during the Assyrian civil war when the garrisons were withdrawn from Egypt, he had become independent.

The great conqueror died in 626. He had ruled long and his years were crowded with events from the beginning to end. True that he was feared as long as he lived but he left the affairs of the country in a sad state.

He rightly boasted in his panegyrical records that he established peace in his empire. In his conquests he was as ruthless as his predecessors but he was greater in peace. He was the first archaeologist of the world and the greatest collector of books and pieces of sculpture and builder of libraries. He imported master architects and sculptors to build his temples and palaces and sculpt their statues and images and cut their reliefs. "He commissioned innumerable scribes to secure and copy for him all the classes of Sumerian and Babylonian literature, and gathered these copies in his library at Nineveh, where modern scholarship found them almost intact after twenty-five centuries of time had flowed over them."

He says: "... I understood the craft of the wise Adapa, the hidden secrets of all the scribal art, in heavenly and earthly buildings I read and pondered; in the meetings of clerks I was present. ... The beautiful writings in Sumerian that are obscure, in Akkadian that are difficult to bear in mind, it was my joy to repeat."
It was from his library that great documents and literary records, especially the *Epic of Gilgamesh* of the Sumerians and Babylonians, were recovered. He is said to have fought lions with a mere knife and javelin, and led all attacks in person. Byron, impressed by his personality, wrote a play about him.

Between the upper reaches of the rivers Euphrates and Tigris, more towards the latter and across it and to the west of the Kurdish mountain there dwelt a hardy and masculine people who called themselves Ashuras, their god Ashura and their first capital around which they grew Ashura. Their country was later called Assyria by the Greeks. They used at the dawn of their civilization prehistoric flakes and flints and knives and black pottery with geometric patterns like those used by the neolithic peoples of Central Asia.

The Assyrians were Semites or perhaps a mixture of the Semites from the south with the non-Semitic Hittites and Mitanni and the Kurdish mountaineers from the Caucasus. They hardened by the constant tension they were to live in. Pressed on one side by the Hittites and the Mitanni and on the other by the unrelenting blood-thirsty hill-men and again pressed from the south by the Babylonians and from the north by the Urartu, the Assyrians too developed inordinate power of resistance and physical hardihood. They were men of mighty muscles and tall and proud bearing and grew long hair and beard both curly and majestic. Their portrayal in high relief present their figure as of men who were stately, cruel and unrelenting. Their gait is so manly that it would make the most masculine men blush with shame. Such men, first trained through the endless skirmishes of the predatory tribes, came to try weapons with men who had been masters of the land between the rivers. When Ashur, the first capital of the Assyrians situated near confluence of the Zog and the Tigris, the ruins of which have been dug out at Kala'at-sherghat, became more vulner-
able and difficult to defend they deserted it and founded a new and military capital in about 1395 B.C. at Kalakh or Calah, the modern Nimrud. Arbela, modern Irbil, where Alexander of Macedon gave the first test of his metal to the Persians, too developed into an important city but the most honoured was Nineveh, modern Kuyunjik, across the Tigris opposite Mosul. Nineveh was named after the Assyrian goddess Nina and its ruins have proved the most prolific site for the remains which represented all the three civilizations of the Sumerians, Babylonians and Assyrians. This last capital of the Ashuras was peopled by some 300,000 souls in the days of Ashurbanipal, the emperor to whom all the world flocked to pay tribute and carry out his commands. The great library of the archaeologist king and the most outstanding and giant specimens of art were exhumed from the palaces of Nineveh. And the chronology of the kings of the Ashuras is wonderfully correct for it has been preserved through the eponymous magistracies. The library of Sargon II at Khorsabad has yielded a remarkable document, a tablet bearing an unbroken list of Assyrian kings from the twenty-third century B.C. to Ashurnirari of the eighth century B.C. (753-746 B.C.).

The Fall of Nineveh

Ashurbanipal left the state of Assyria impoverished and weak following his costly campaigns, mainly against Elam. The northern tribes had been extremely restive even while the monarch was alive and the Scythians had overrun Syria. And now after Elam had been removed the younger tribes of Iran likewise became restive. In the north the scythians, the Mannai and the Cimmerians combined and took the mixed name of Umman-manda and confederated with the Medes under their king Uvkhashatra and got ready to strike. The Scythians under their youthful leader Madyes, son of Bartatua, was laying the country waste. He had ravaged
all the lands up to the borders of Egypt and had been bought off with rich bribes by Psamatik the Pharaoh. The Scythians indeed struck terror in western Asia through their depredations and even drove the Cimmerians out of the field. Mysides, the Scyth, was murdered by Uvakhshatra the Mede.

Babylonia broke away from Assyria and soon after Ashurbanipal’s death established its free authority under an energetic local chief Nabu-pal-usur (Nabopolassar). The successors of Ashurbanipal were weaklings. Nabu-pal-usur and Uvakhshatra entered into a treaty against Assyria and in 612 B.C. together they descended on the shrunken kingdom. In that year, after a terrible siege, Nineveh was destroyed and the last Assyrian king Sin-shar-ishkun perished in the flames of his burning palace with his courtiers and slaves. And thus ended the story of a city that had decreed the death and destruction of endless towns in course of its own existence, and of a dynasty the like of which the history of man has never known. No country ever produced a succession of conquerors at once so powerful, so ambitious, so ruthless and so many. But its end was of a piece with its character.

Assyrian Civilization

The Assyrian empire was a military organization and its emperor were sworn militarists. Strength of its armies was its passion, enslavement of nations its ambition. The hardy farmers of the Assyrian uplands were welded into a nation of ruthless fighters and the state was organized on a footing of constant warfare. The military science was developed to an extent no former state organization in history had reached and the art of laying siege was perfected. The horse and the bowmen played their role as never before. Resistance was crushed with relentless cruelty. Flaring alive and burning at stake of the war victims, mainly the chiefs, who were yoked to triumphal chariots, became common.
The storming of a city meant, on its capitulation, a ruthless sack, putting the citizens to sword, even children not spared sometimes, razing it completely to the ground, carrying away its gods, depopulating entire districts and provinces, rehabilitating them with alien peoples being some of those characteristics which are reminiscent today of the Assyrians. Their ruthlessness, strength of body and organization of military state left such indelible impressions that literatures of nations are replete with references to them. Even the distant Indian literature was affected by the memory and the word Asura, formed albeit from asavah, pranah, i.e. vitals, came to signify a demon. From the Rigveda down to the classics Asura denoted power and ruthless strength. Even Kalidasa refers indirectly to the cruel warfare of the Assyrians, the Asuras, by his advocating the ways of the ‘righteous conqueror’ (dharmavijayi), who took away the sovereignty from the vanquished but not his state (sriyam jahara na tu medinim) as against the Asura kind of warfare wherein the conqueror brought annihilation to the population and uprooted violently the state (utkhaya tarasa). Such an enlightened prince as Ashurbanipal too behaved as a savage with his enemies. The destruction of Elam he related himself in an epitaph of his exploits. He was feasting with his queen when the head of the conquered king was brought in. He got it hung over the gate of Nineveh where it rotted away. Dananu, the commander of the forces of Elam was bled like a lamb after he had been flayed alive. Then his throat was cut, and the parts of his quartered body were distributed among the grandes of the land as souvenirs.

But however ruthlessly the enemies were suppressed one has to admit that the Assyrians brought a genius to bear on the administrative organization of their governance. To hold nations like the Assyrians, Babylonians, Armenians, Medians, Palestinians, Syrians, Phoenicians, Sumerians, Elamites, Egyptians, and a hundred petty peoples together
was no joke. Since the diverse and loose ethnic units were held together by an iron hand there were mutinies and rebellions and disaffection had to be met by a transfer of total populations from one part of the empire to another. The empire had been conquered by force and could be held only by force the army naturally had to be the most vital part of the government. The Assyrians were great veterans of war and they made a great contribution to the science of warfare. They brought the siege mechanism to perfection. Battering rams tipped with iron and worked with ropes or mounted on wheels were used to smash the gates and breach the walls of a besieged town. The use of cavalry was an Assyrian innovation. Missiles, torches and burning pitch were used to befuddle the besieging enemy. Soldiers fought with arrows, lances, cutlasses, maces, clubs and axes. Kings, nobles and generals fought from the chariots in the vanguard and all soldiers, the archers and pikemen not excepted wore 'copper or iron helmets, padded loin-cloth, and carried enormous shields and a leather skirt covered with metal scales'. Soldiers' bravery was whetted by the prospect of loot and the greater part of the spoils and booty went to them. Prisoners generally were not taken and were beheaded, but when taken they were used as slaves or sold into slavery. Before driving the prisoners their lips and nose were perforated and a string was passed through them like animals. (Later, introduced in India by the Arabs, the naqil (nakel) gave place to the nose-ring of the bride and the sign of coverture of the Hindu wives. Earlier images are never decked with a nose-ring and there is no word for the ornament in Sanskrit to indicate it.)

The king was the head of the administration but the god Ashur was supposed to be the source of law and all laws and edicts were promulgated in his name and all taxes were levied and collected at his instance. The king himself, originally a patesi or semi-priestly monarch, was an in-
carnation of god Shamash. The church naturally became rich through the bounteous gifts of the state.

Punishments were of diverse kinds ranging from forced labour, flogging and cutting the limbs to capital punishment by impaling, burning, beheading, drowning and flaying alive. Adultery, rape and a few kinds of theft were punishable with death of which another mode was administering poison. Trial by ordeal was not unknown.

The economic life was secure. The Assyrians, who generally were vegetarians except for their gentry, despite their cruel acts in war, grew the corns, fruits and vegetables and irrigated their fields with canals. They mixed the metals, blew glass and dyed textiles, imported cotton from India, replaced bronze by iron and earned high interest on loans. Serfs and slaves worked in the fields and artisans formed unions and organized into guilds. Lead, copper, silver and gold served as currency and Sennacherib minted silver about 700 B.C. into half-shekel pieces and thus founded the system of coinage, the first in history, long before the Lydian Croesus.

The Assyrian conquerors sought to crush nations through their unexampled mercilessness and yet there were rebellions year after year; the chiefs and the people knew the unrelenting fate awaiting them following capture and yet they revolted; the cities were conscious of the slaughter that would ensue on their capitulation, all the same, they closed their gates to the inhuman invader and faced the inevitable holocaust. It was because violence and militarism can never crush peoples and nations. They have their repercussions rebounding on themselves as it happened in Assyria. Nations rose, suffered yet balked the barbarians, and turned the blazes of fire that the latter had made for others to themselves, and the flames gutted their palaces and licked clean their monuments of victory and motifs of art. Distant nations and their chroniclers wondered, as do we
now sometimes, at the fate of Nineveh. But no, Nineveh went down amid the curses of the nations and was forgotten like a story told, an argument long forgotten, for its glory was written on the tide of water and was washed away when the waves rolled. So one should not wonder at the fate of Nineveh. The contemporary prophet Nahum never did. Instead, he blazed forth in splendid poetry the inevitable doom: "Woe to the bloody city. Behold, I am against thee, saith the Lord of Hosts, and I will discover thy skirts upon thy face, and I will show the nations thy nakedness and the kingdoms thy shame. And will cast abominable filth upon thee, and make thee vile, and set thee as a gazing-stock. And it shall come to pass, that all they that look upon thee shall flee from thee, and say, Nineveh is laid waste; who will be-moan her? Behold, thy people in the midst of thee are women, the gates of thy land shall be set wide open unto thine enemies: the fire shall devour thy walls.... Thy shepherds slumber, O King of Assyria; thy nobles shall dwell in the dust; thy people is scattered upon the mountains, and no man gathereth them. There is no healing of thy hurt; thy wound is grievous; all that hear the grief of thee shall clap their hands over thee, for upon whom hath not thy wickedness passed continually?"

Assyrians had no literature except what they were able to borrow from subject-nations like the Palestinians, Sumerians and Babylonians. But they were great conservators of ancient literature. They learnt from the Sumerians and their successors, the Babylonians, the art of cuneiform writing and collected hundreds of thousands of the bricks that bore ancient literature and even made fresh copies of them. Ashurbanipal himself was a superb collector and his library and archives have preserved treasures of ancient literature in the absence of which much of our knowledge of the ancient Middle and Near East would have been lost to us: In order to save the volumes of his library Ashurbanipal
caused to be incised on his behalf on several of the tablets: "Who so shall carry off this tablet may Ashur and Belit overthrow him in wrath and destroy his name and posterity from the land." But the Medes and the Persians—the reputed Aryans—could hardly be deterred by these gods, and had little regard for writing. They set fire to the library too while putting Nineveh to flames. How it was saved is a positive wonder. Another kind of important literature that Assyrian kings have left to us in extensive, though boastful, chronicles of their campaigns. A third and very exceptional class of writing is the limmi, the eponymous magistracies which record the dates of contemporary events so accurately that they have become the sheet-anchor of the contemporary Middle East chronology.

The Assyrians borrowed their gods too, mostly from the Babylonians, except a few of whom the most important god was Ashur. He was their supreme national deity. Ashur was their hero and god, Ashur was the name of their old capital, as also that of the Assyrian people. But as the rulers came in touch with other peoples they created a regular pantheon of the divinities they borrowed from others, chiefly the Babylonians. Ea, Baal, Nesroch, Nebu, Shamash, Sin, Nergal, Ishtar, all came to be honoured.

But one aspect of genius that the Assyrians developed was their love for art. Who their artists were, or from where they came, we do not know, but the commissions they executed, the reliefs they traced and the motifs they carved were indeed the wonders of their age and set models to the arts of subsequent nations. Their palaces were feats of contemporary architecture and the tracings along their walls and the reliefs had no parallel. Their lion-figures, carved steeds, and frieze decorations created examples for the contemporary world to follow. Their bulls and lions journeying through the splendid specimens of like and subsequent sculptures ultimately set the originals for the Asokan monuments
in India. The hunting scenes on the walls of Ashurbani-pal’s palace, chiefly the figure of the arrow-struck lioness, have no parallels in liveliness and vigour. The remains laid bare at Khorsabad and elsewhere in Iraq by the spade of the archaeologist, now mostly stored in the museums of Europe, leave the visitors gaping in dumbfounded wonder.

This aspect of the Assyrian life, its art, deserves to be treated a little more fully. The riches of the kings looted by the monarchs during their conquests and the gains realized by the merchants helped the Assyrians undertake great works of digging canal for irrigation and of building great temples and palaces and excellent and giant pieces of sculpture that strike their beholders with wondrous admiration.

The Assyrian art can be divided into five branches, viz. architecture, sculpture, relief, painting and inlay work. Most of the Assyrian monarchs were great builders but half a dozen of them disdain parallels. They were Tiglath-Pileser I, Ashurnasirpal II, Sargon II, Sennacherib, and Esarhaddon. Tiglath-Pileser built the temples of the earliest capital Ashur by making at least one of them internally resplendent like the vault of heaven, decorated its walls like the splendour of the rising stars, and made it superb with shining brightness. Kalakh or Calah and Nineveh, the latter built and the former with ramparts built round it served models for forts, fastnesses and citadels for the posterior nations. ‘Kala’ short of Kalakh entered the vocabulary of later languages and found expression in words like, kila, a fort, Al-Qila, Qalat, and qalai, the last meaning enamelling in Persian. One need not wonder if the Sanskrit word for art and aesthetics, kala, was later formed from this base. It is significant that the palace of Yudhishthira, as evidenced by the Mahabharata, which created the illusion of water on land and of land in water, is said to have been built by an Asura called Maya whose name has been often repeated in the Puranas and works on architecture as a peerless architect. At Kalakh
Ashurnasirpal II created a grand mansion of bricks faced with stone and decorated it with reliefs and friezes. Later princes bestowed their patronage over the capital Nineveh. Sennacherib was the next builder of great consequence and he raised a royal palace at Nineveh which he christened as 'The Incomparable'. It was indeed incomparable as its walls and floors sparkled with precious metals, woods, and stones; its tiles vied in their brilliance with the luminaries of day and night; the metal-workers cast for it gigantic lions and oxen of copper, and the sculptors carved for it winged bulls of limestone and alabaster, and lined i's walls with pastoral symphonies in bas-relief. Esarhaddon is said to have surpassed his predecessors in the grandeur and luxury of his palaces. At Dur-Sharukkin king Sharukkin (Sargon II) built a remarkable palace, its gates flanked by winged bulls, walls decorated with reliefs and tiles and huge halls enriched with delicately carved pieces of furniture and beautiful statues. Sargon erected temples also but his most stupendous structure was a ziggurat of seven storeys topped with gold and silver. At Balawat, near Kalakh, have been discovered two bronze gates finished with glorious designs. The vault, arch and columns which the Assyrians built passed on to other and younger nations to serve as models.

The Assyrians were not very great as far as human sculptures were concerned. A piece here and there does do credit to their skill, for example the statue of Ashurnasirpal II in the British Museum, which is a masterpiece, but human sculptures in general are much below the mark. Their mastery lay in shaping animals in the round which are superb. The animals are full blooded and majestic and like the human figures they also have knotted muscles. The winged bulls that guarded the palace at Nineveh or the bulls that were formed at Khorsabad are unparalleled examples of plastic and metallic art.

The genius of the Assyrian artist lay in shaping relief.
In that branch they have no peers, no equals either before or after. The human figures there too are rather stylized, all the same they are very stately with their tall and bearded heads, determined look, knotted muscles, massive bearing, ball-shaped calves. In that sphere too the animal figures carry the palm although the fight between god Marduk and the evil Tiamat is a remarkable incident. The figures of the animals have no parallels. Lions, horses, asses, goats, dogs, deer, birds, grasshoppers all have been done with superb skill. The stately horse of Sargon II, the wounded lioness, the dying lion, the lioness resting and the lion freed from a trap—all are exquisite. Bas-relief is a branch midway between sculpture and painting. Painting does not seem to have been cultivated much although tempera was attempted with considerable skill. Bright colours under a thin glaze found favour with the Assyrian artist.

Metal was cast to advantage and the great gates of Khorsabad have already been referred to. Delicate furniture too was done with great skill. They carved beautiful figures on costly wood and finished them with inlay work using gold, silver and precious stones.
CHAPTER III

PALESTINE

Land and its People

We have said so much about Palestine, its numerous states and cities, a constant prey to the cupidity and aggression of the Egyptian, Babylonian, Hittite and Assyrian monarchs. It will be better to have an idea of the land itself which was the meeting place of all the powers of the neighbourhood. It was the ‘Holy Land’ where the great and fearless Prophets of the Old Testament preached fire, which again was the ‘Promised Land’.

Looking at the map of Palestine we find a mountainous strip of country stretching along the Mediterranean coast enclosed by Egypt, Arabia, Syria and Phoenicia. In the north lay Syria and Phoenicia, both lying almost parallel to each other, Syria to the east and Phoenicia to the west, between Syria and the sea covering roughly the modern state of Lebanon. Phoenicia was full of rich coastal cities and, as the mistress of the sea, came, in course of time, to found prosperous and powerful colonies along the Mediterranean. Its wealth attracted conquerors and its towns became constant cockpits for the neighbouring powers. To the east of Palestine lay the desert of Arabia where the nomad tribes moved about restlessly. Egypt lay to the south and its bord-
ers of the holy land. To the west of Palestine lay the land-locked sea.

The midland had numerous settlements, numerous tribes and numerous kingdoms. Gilead lay to the south of the Yarmuk river, in the north-east, and to its west and south-west stretched the territory of Israel, west of the Jordan; due south of Gilead was situated the kingdom of Ammon along whose southern borders ran the marches of Moab. Judah lay next to Israel and to its south. The kingdom of Edom, lying in the extreme south, was pressed between Arabia and Egypt. Philistia ran along the sea and its borders in the north ended where the Phoenician borders began.

This was the unfortunate land of the Jews and the Israelites where Abraham led his flock, the Petrarchs cast their longing eyes and where Moses wandered back from Egypt to find the ‘Promised Land’ to settle his people down there. The ever-moving sons of Israel, hounded out of one place, crowded out of another, object of hatred and incalculable wrong and subjected to persistent persecutions across countries, across time, have again found their home and have built up their state round Zion where their Judges once judged by the Laws, Solomon ruled with wisdom and the Prophets preached their fury and Christ his love.

About the middle of the 14th century B.C. all the great states of Egypt, Babylon, Khatti and Assyria became paralysed which was a signal for the rise of new and independent states in Palestine and Syria. Tribal movements were astir and heading towards this middle land. The Aramaeans moved about this time from the bank of the mid Euphrates and settled down in Syria in the land of Ubi with its capital at Damascus, thus absorbing the Amorites and Hittites in course of time. To the South of the Aramaeans and across the Yarmuk river were the Hebrews already settled. The original home had been Harron
in Mesopotamia. They were Semitic like the Aramaeans and seemed to have been of Arabian extraction. They were perhaps already astir about the time of Hammurabi. One of the earliest movements had been led by Abraham whose exact time cannot be stated although some scholars have read in the Biblical texts the possibility of his having been a contemporary of the great Babylonian lawgiver Hammurabi.

It is possible that the ancestors of the Hebrews moved out of Ur under Abraham about 2000 B.C., entered Canaan and left it soon after, reaching Egypt sometimes about 1800. It is possible also that the Hyksos were part of the great movement who, after taking Egypt, settled the Jews there as their state functionaries and tax-collectors. The rule of the Hyksos became so intolerable, because of their oppressive ways and because of the Egyptian love for independence, that the people of Egypt rose in revolt and expelled the foreign rulers. The Jews too were foreigners who had so identified themselves with the Hyksos and made themselves so hated through their tyrannical methods of exactions that the Egyptians made a bid to annihilate them. But their leaders, Moses, led them out of the country and, wandering across the Arabian desert and the slopes of the Sinai under extremely severe conditions of every character, they entered Palestine. Moses himself died on the way but his followers under Aaron reached the Promised Land which they made their final abode. The Aramaeans and the Israelites, having originated from the same spot and being closely akin in stock, coalesced easily and from the first. They absorbed in course of time the Canaanite and Amorite inhabitants of the land too who were Semites like them.

The Philistines entered Palestine a little later and settled down south of Phoenicia along the sea. They were uncircumcised Aegean invaders from Crete and were never sought to be absorbed by the Semites to whom they were so alien in
everything. The Phoenicians in the north and out of Palestine were Semites but they looked down upon the Arameans of Syria and the Israelites of Palestine because they were so backward in civilization. They themselves were rich merchants and masters of the sea, and traded all along the Mediterranean coats and with distant countries. They soon established big colonies into which the wealth of the nations and the world flowed. Among these Carthage, with which the Romans fought for a couple of centuries through their historic Punic Wars a duel unto death and which ultimately met its destruction at their hands, was the greatest. It was founded about the close of the ninth century; Utika and Gades were much older; and Tharthish was the oldest, busy with commerce as early as Hiram I and Solomon in the 10th century B.C.

**Hebrew Conquest of Palestine and the Philistines**

The position of the Hebrew settlement in Palestine may now tentatively be stated thus. About the time of Hammurabi Abraham left Harron in Mesopotamia with his tribes, crossed the Euphrates, defeated the Five Kings of Syria and settled down in southern Canaan. About 1800 B.C. the tribes entered Egypt with the Hyksos and remained there for about five centuries. About 1300 B.C. the Exodus began and Moses and Aaron led the Israelites from Egypt wandering across the desert for about three decades. About the middle of the 13th century Aaron led his people into the 'Promised Land', the home of their ancestors, perhaps by way of Jericho.

From the Biblical account it would seem that the main body of the tribe crossed the Jordan and entered Canaan near the city of Jericho. Jericho and Ai were taken after a fight. The Israelites pushed further into the hill-country and occupied Bethel and Shiloh. Then they moved southwest under Joshua into the Shephelah where the Canaanite kings of Lachish and Gezer were defeated and Lachish,
Gezer, and Ekron were occupied. After this there followed troubles within the Israelite camp which, however, were settled and a reconciliation ended their quarrels for the present. The invaders were now in possession of two enclaves of hill-territory—Mount Ephraim in the north, and Judah in the south, Jerusalem still lying as a Canaanite wedge between them. The Canaanite princes, however, combined to throw them out of the plans where they were powerless before the enemy's chariots.

At this stage a new power entered the land. The Philistines with their broad swords and huge spears made their appearance and carried everything before them. Don and Asher, two trading tribes who had settled down on the seacoast were thrown down and driven into the hills from wherever they had been in the plains. They took the deities of the Canaanites away from them and enslaved their inhabitants. They had established their own state in Canaan about 1100 B.C. comprising mainly of the five settlements of Ashdod, Gaza, Ashkelon, Gath, and Ekron. Each one of these was ruled by a Seren with his nobles. They took counsel together under the leadership of the Seren of Ashdod who also commanded the forces during war. In these cities and in others the Philistines had their theatres in which huge crowds of spectators could assemble to watch the theatre or gladiatorial comba's. The Biblical account of Samson gives the number of men and women assembled in the theatre of Gaza as three thousand to watch Samson make sport.

This Philistine culture was the product of a foreign military garrison and soon gave way to the Semitic civilization taking over the Canaanite gods and manner of worship and by the time of David the Philistines had started speaking the Canaanite tongue.

But since their impact on the Israelites was great which threw them into confusion, the latter were compelled to retreat into their hill-fastnesses of the uplands. There they
were attacked by the Arab tribes. Midianites particularly reduced them to extreme straits, taking away all the produce of the earth. Two Israelite leaders, Gideon and Jerubbaal, are particularly recorded as having given reprisals to the Midianite raiders.

The kingdom of Edom, between the Dead Sea and the Gulf of Akaba, perhaps of the Aramaean origin, was fast developing into a powerful state. It had inflicted a severe defeat upon the Midianites in the territory of Moab during the reign of Hadad I. Moab, Ammon and Edom made a common cause against the Israelites and off and on attacked their territory.

A kingship had begun taking shape among the Israelites and Abimelech, son of Jerubbaal, seems to have attempted to rule over part of Israel definitely as a king. The result was a revolt and civil war. Shechem, the city of the tyrant, was burnt and he was killed at Thebez.

The Philistine invasion had come about 1080 B.C. The victory over the Israelites in the battle of Ebenha-ezer was complete. It annihilated the Israelite army and the sacred ark of Yahweh was captured. The resistance was broken. Garrisons were placed at numerous places to guard against the risings of Israelites. For half a century the grip of Philistine over Israelites was secure.

Samuel, the prophet, who hated all those who worshipped other gods than Yahweh, could not excuse the Philistines for the insult they had done to the Israelitish sanctuary even after they had restored the ark. He nurtured a religious revolt with Saul as its leader. Saul's kingdom of Israel was the result. Samuel, however, had never wished to establish an independent kingship. His idea was to make of Saul a great leader who would be subservient to him after war. But Saul could not play the second fiddle to Samuel. The differences between them went on widening and after Samuel's death his followers were put to the sword. David,
a young rival of Saul, at once secured the support of the infuriated priests and with their help he captured the Israelite throne. David ruled at his fastness of Jerusalem.

But before we come to the reign of David, the story of Saul's revolt must be told. The Philistines had forbidden the working in metals so that arms might not be available to the Israelites but Saul and Jonathan his son, managed to get them for their men. Saul's first expedition was led against the Ammonite prince Nahash, and after defeating the latter and securing his people's allegiance, he now crossed the Jordan and fell upon the garrison at Geba. The garrison was confused and the Philistines were badly beaten at the great battle of Michmash. Saul next moved against the Amalekites, defeated and took their king prisoner whom Samuel sacrificed with his own hands.

The Philistines in the meanwhile were not sitting idle and were attacking the Israelites and were being attacked by them. Continuous warfare became the order of the day during the entire length of the reign of Saul. During this war David, the son of Jesse of Bethlehem in Judah, distinguished himself to an exceptional degree. He became so popular with the army and the people that Saul gave him his own daughter.

Saul, however, soon found out that David was intriguing with Samuel against him and he became so furious that his son-in-law had to flee the kingdom. David then started making war on the Philistines on his own account. Saul in the meanwhile continued to harass him through his pursuits and David was compelled to come to peace with the Philistines and to accept a sief under their king of Gath. This king canvassed with the Philistine chiefs to take David on the expedition against Saul but they refused to put faith in him or to receive his aid. So David could not take part in the great battle of Mount Gilboa in which both Saul and his son Jonathan were killed.
Henceforth two kings started ruling over the Israelites both under the tutelage of the Philistines. Ishbaal, son of Saul, ruled at Mahanaim, while David ruled at Hebron in the south. David, however, soon deposed Ishbaal and took over the whole kingdom of Saul. This act was supported by Samuel and the priests and accepted by the majority of the people. A little later Ashbaal was murdered and David became the undisputed Lord of Israel. He soon moved from Hebron to the impregnable fortress of Jerusalem after capturing it with great cunning. The Philistines could not bear this coup of David quietly moving to his new seat from where he could always defy them. They sent an expedition against him but it failed miserably for David beat them twice at Baal-perazim and in the valley of Rephaim. At both the places the Philistines were thoroughly routed. Even their gods were captured.

David followed up his successes by declaring an all-out war on Philistia and opening operations against Gath. Gath was the kingdom that had given David, when he had fled from Saul, asylum and a fief, and the same was now fighting for life. Fighting in such a situation is always severe and in the battles that followed quarters were neither given nor sought. Ultimately David captured Gath and fell upon Ashdod, the centre of the Philistine power. The city was taken and almost all resistance broken. David soon took over the dependencies of Gath and the dimensions of Israel touched limits not known thitherto. The Philistine mercenaries flocked to Jerusalem to take service with the victorious king who employed them in the corps of his bodyguards.

The Kingdoms of Israel and Fadah

David organized his kingdom on a military footing. Military officers enjoyed greater privileges than the civil servants. The Israelite state was far more military in chara-
ter than either Egypt or Babylonia. David very diplomatically subordinated the priests also to himself. He himself appointed them and naturally they felt responsible to him. And since he appointed to the office of priests mostly his sons and relatives, they always secured his interest first.

David's next move was to organize revenge on those that had been his enemies and he spared nobody. Thus the ancient enemy of Israel Moab was overthrown and two-thirds of her inhabitants were slaughtered despite the fact that the kingdom had given asylum to his parents when he was in hiding to evade Saul's anger. Ammon's turn came next. So knowing its lot the kingdom entered into an alliance with the Aramaean tribes against Israel. The allies, however, were utterly defeated and later David massacred the citizens of the capital of Ammon after taking it. This angered the Aramaean king of Zobah and he sent his general with a big army against David but the latter defeated the enemy severely. Syrians then moved against him and he beat them too and annexed Damascus, the capital of Syria. This raised David's prestige in the eyes of distant rulers and the kings of Hamath and Tyre sought his friendship and became his allies.

After settling thus the affairs in the north David turned south. Edom was invaded and overthrown and a general massacre of its people ordered and carried out. The king of Edom was killed in the battle and his son fled to Egypt where the Pharaoh gave him a pension till David's death. Edom was annexed as far as the sea. Thus within a short time David made Israel an extensive and powerful kingdom. He, however, could not live in peace in his old age because of the harem-intrigues. He had to flee the capital following the rebellion of Absalom. Another son Adonijah attempted to wrest the crown which the king had sought to reserve for his son Solomon. Solomon therefore was at once con-
secreted and associated with his father in the affairs of the state.

On the death of his father Solomon succeeded without a struggle. All those who had supported the cause of his rival were either put to death or removed from the way through exile.

Solomon was magnificent and tyrannical. He slew all pretenders to his throne. The simple ways of his father were abandoned by him. He was now one of the greatest kings of the age and received tributes from far and near. To the common man he was also exceedingly wise. He was a man of great culture and an uncommon aesthete. He enjoyed every pleasure, lived every luxury, fulfilled every kingly duty. We are told that he secured ‘seven hundred wives and three hundred concubines.’ This perhaps does not include the queen of Sheba who visited him being infatuated with his wisdom and whom he ingeniously lifted to his bed. He built a great temple at Jerusalem, the first building of importance in Israel, and its splendour sat deeply in the commoners’ mind. The Jews came to consider him the wisest and the mightiest and the most magnificent of all rulers of all times. He made wealth by commerce and maintained it. His kingdom lay on the highway between Egypt and Mesopotamia and between Arabia and Asia Minor, and the result was a downpour of wealth. He persuaded the Phoenician merchants to pass their caravans via Jerusalem. His one year weight of gold is listed as ‘six hundred three score and six talents.’ We are told that he ‘made silver as plentiful in Jerusalem as stones in the street.’ The Pharaoh gave him his daughter and along with her Gaza in dowry which was a great centre of trade. Solomon’s wisdom lay, besides other ways, in diplomatically keeping Israel out of war.

The marriage-alliance with Egypt secured peace on the south-west border while friendship with Hiram I, the king of Tyre, the most powerful Phoenician prince, opened his way
to the rich Mediterranean cities of Phoenicia. With the help of Hiram of Tyre he equipped a great naval expedition from Ezion-geber to the land of Ophir and brought back the famous cargoes of the wealth of India—ivory, apes, and peacocks described in such detail in the Book of Kings. Thus trade even with distant India was fairly brisk. He is supposed to have exchanged the Galilaean towns to Hiram for his cedar and gold.

His reign became the theme of popular romance. Bilkis, the queen of Sheba, is supposed to have gone to Jerusalem to see the wise and magnificent king. At last the king's unrealistic living bore fruit. Both Edom and Syria broke away from Solomon's kingdom and became independent. David's days were gone. Hadad III, who had taken refuge in Egypt and married an Egyptian princess returned and won back the independence of his lost kingdom. So also did Rezon of Syria captured his kingdom. After the death of Solomon the kingdom split again into two natural states of Judah and Israel.

Solomon died about 930 B.C. after a rule of about 45 years and was succeeded by his son Rehoboam who turned out to be good for nothing. Soon the northern part of the kingdom, Israel, was seized by Jeroboam, son of Nebat. Religious reaction against the idolatrous tendency of Solomon had contributed to the success of this revolt, but as soon as Jeroboam secured the throne he did not hesitate to offer public sacrifices to the bull-images at Dan and Bethel. Since then for about two centuries the Prophets waged constant war against the iconic trends of the royal court and the majority of the population. The result was the intrepid splendid prophetic literature of the Old Testament the like of which is not to be found in any literature of the world. Yahveh was the sole god the prophets adored.

Judah remained simple and isolated in the hills, almost wholly an iconic. In the fifth year of his reign (c. 925 B.C.
Rehoboam was attacked by Shishak (Sheshenk I) of Egypt and Jerusalem was captured and sacked.

The Philistines acknowledge Egyptian supremacy to save themselves from the Israeliite enmity and aggression. This supremacy was never challenged by either David or Solomon.

With the battle of Karkar (853 B.C.) in which Shalmaneser II defeated the confederate forces of Syria, Hamath, and Israel, history of the kingdoms of Syria and Palestine merged into that of Assyria and Babylonia. The role of the two kingdoms of Judah and Israel was rather a secondary one after now, and sack and surrender and depopulation were their lot. And yet their prophets, whether bound or free, thundered against the tall and the mighty and called upon the elements to destroy the haters of Yahveh. They were terrible monotheists and with Akhenaten the first to preach the dominion of one god, and of the chances of the poor against the rich, which note was carried on and consummated in the promise by Christ of the 'Kingdom of Paradise' on earth.

THE LIFE AND CULTURE OF THE JEWS

The temple that Solomon built at Jerusalem became a centre and rallying point for the Jews and gave their god Yahveh (Jehova) a home. The god, himself very jealous, made his devotees also an intolerant people. They originally honoured the bull and the sheep but when they became monotheist all other adorations ceased to find their favour and the Golden Calf was forgotten. Serpent worship too had been in vogue and a bronze serpent, said to have been made by Moses himself, was adored in the temple until Hezekiah stopped it about 720 B.C. Baal also had once found favour with the Jews. Idols, magic and divination had been part of their life which, however, they gave up and accepted Yahveh as an exclusive national god as a result of the fiery
preachings of the prophets and priests. Thoroughly human, Yahweh came to have his strong likes and dislikes, lauded and cursed, fought and won. He is as vain as a soldier and as revengeful too, so that since the Jews 'commit whoredom' with the daughters of Moab he orders Moses thus: "Take all the heads of the people, and hang them up before the Lord against the sun." He offers to be kind to those who love him and obey his commands or else he will punish the children not only for the sins of fathers but even for those of the great-great-grandfathers. He permits human sacrifices. Despite Abraham's solicitations he destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah. His curses emit fire: "Cursed shalt thou be in the city, and cursed shalt thou be in the field. Cursed shall be the fruit of thy body, and the fruit of thy land. Cursed shall thou be when thou comest in, and cursed shall thou be when thou goest out."

The Old Testament reflects the Jewish creed and the Bible before Christ the theology of the Jews. Sin is its central idea and the revenge falls on him who practises sin instead of virtue. The effect of sin could be offset by prayer or sacrifice. Circumcision, a form of sacrifice, was retained and made imperative along with the sacrifice of animals when that of human beings was stopped. The Jews believed in a thousand taboos which were cleaned by rituals performed by the priests who lived by them and by the gifts offered at the temple altar.

The cruelty of the alien armies and the big gap between the rich and poor created unbridgeable differences and the exploitation of the masses by the classes provoked some just and honest men to raise their voice against injustice and inequity. These were the dauntless prophets (Nabi in Hebrew translated pro-phe-tes in Greek), fanatics against the exploiters and the perjurers of the Faith. They were simple folk incensed at the injustices and poverty of their people made them emit fire. They denounced riches and luxuries
and became the first socialists of history. Palestine lay in the way of the conquerors who crushed and insulted it every time they moved across it and the prophets denounced them. They denounced the ruthless Assyrian emperors also and they did not care for what the consequences would be. Amos announced: "And the ivory shall perish, and the great houses shall have an end." "The calf of Samaria," declares Hosia, "shall be broken into pieces; for they have sown the wind, and they shall reap the whirlwind."

The most eminent of the prophets, the first radicals were Amos, Isaiah, Hosea, Josiah, Jeremiah, Ezekiel, 'Second Isaiah'; and last of all came John the Baptist and Jesus Christ. But they of course belong not to the Jewish faith but were the usherers of a new faith, Christianity. The utterances of a few of the prophets will elucidate the fire and zeal with which they denounced the oppressors and propagated the cult of Yahveh. Amos spoke thus:

"For as much, therefore, as your trading is upon the poor, and ye take from him burdens of wheat; ye have built houses of hewn stone, but ye shall not dwell in them; ye have planted pleasant vineyards, but ye shall not drink wine of them. Woe to them that are at ease in Zion, that lie on beds of ivory, and stretch themselves upon their coach-es, and eat the lamb out of the flock, and the calves out of the midst of the stall; that chant to the sound of the viol, and invent to themselves instruments of music, like David; that drink wine in bowls, and anoint themselves with the chief ointments."

"The Lord will enter into judgment," Isaiah lashes out, "with the ancients of his people and the princes thereof; for ye have eaten up the vineyard; the spoil of the people is in your houses. What mean ye that ye beat my people to pieces, and grind the faces of the poor? Woe unto them that join house to house, that lay field to field, till there be no place, that they may be placed alone in the midst of the
earth! Woe unto them that decree unrighteous decrees to turn aside the needy from judgment, and to take away the right from the poor of my people, that widows may be their prey, and that they may rob the fatherless. And what will ye do in the day of visitation, and in the desolation which shall come from afar? To whom will ye flee for help, and where will ye leave your glory?"

Jeremia lamented reflecting on the misfortunes of the good and the prosperity of the unrighteous:

"How doth the city sit solitary that was full of people! How is she become as a widow! She that was great among the nations, and princess among the provinces, how is she become tributary! Is it nothing to you, all ye that pass by? Behold and see if there be any sorrow... Righteous art thou, O Lord, when I plead with thee: yet let us talk with thee of thy judgments: Wherefore doth the way of the wicked prosper? Wherefore are all they happy that deal very treacherously?"

The Second Isaiah predicted: "The voice of him that crieth in the wilderness, Prepare ye the way of the Lord, make straight in the desert a highway for our God. Every valley shall be exalted, and every mountain and hill shall be made low; and the crooked shall be made straight, and the rough places plain. Behold, the Lord God will come with strong hand, and his arm shall rule for him. He shall feed his flock like a shepherd; he shall gather the lambs with his arm, and carry them in his bosom and shall gently lead those, that are with young." The prophet's Messianic hope describes the 'Servant' who will come and redeem Israel: "He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief;...he was despised, and we esteemed him not. Surely he hath borne our grieves, and carried our sorrows; yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted. But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities; the chastise-
ment of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed. The Lord hath laid on him the inequity of us all."

Man never spoke with such vigour, such hope. And the hope was answered for the Messiah came, the Christ born of the Virgin came heralded by John the Baptist, and that as much to the shame of the Herods and the Romans as to the shame of the Jews. But that indeed is a page from a different history.

Nebuchadrezzar, the conquering king of Chaldea, captured Jerusalem, burned it to the ground, destroyed the temple of Solomon, slew king Zedekiah's sons in front of him, gouged out his eyes, and carried practically all the population and its prophets into captivity in Babylonia. The Babylonian captivity gave to the Jews their 'Book of the Covenant,' the Mosaic Laws of the 'Ten Commandments,' the 'Pentateuch' (the Greek for the five Rolls), the 'Old Testament,' the Holy Bible, and announced peace to the world. Later the Jews and their prophets were set free by the Persian emperor Kurush (Cyprus), Jerusalem was rebuilt and so was the Temple of Solomon with it. The 'Book of the Covenant' was a charter of demands, like the Magna Carta, a charter of decrees and exhortations of the prophets which had echoed and reechoed in the void of western Asia. The 'Book of the Law of Moses' was the Torah or the Law, the Five Books, the Pentateuch. These compositions took the written form about 300 B.C. The Genesis—Creation—Temptation and the Flood, the Paradise, Eden and the forbidden fruit form part of it. The Ten Commandments were the Code of life recommended to the Jew, not always lived. The first command sought to eradicate heresy by making it punishable with death, should the heretic be the nearest kin. The Second elevated the national concept and character of God. The Third Commandment typified the intense piety of the Jews. The
Fourth sanctified the weekly day of rest as a Sabbath. The Fifth sanctified the family, as second only to the Temple in the structure of Jewish society. The Sixth was a counsel of perfection, against murders and violence. The Seventh recognized marriage as the basis of the family, as the Fifth had recognized the family as the basis of society. The Eighth Command sanctioned and sanctified private property and bound it up with religion and the family as one of the three bases of Hebrew society. The Ninth demanded absolute honesty of witnesses, put the prop of religion under the whole structure of Jewish law. And the last of the Ten Commandments—Thou shalt not covet thy neighbour’s house, thou shalt not covet thy neighbour’s wife, nor his manservant, nor his maidservant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor anything that is thy neighbour’s”—reveals those social flaws that make for the strife in the world. But the greatest of the commands not listed among the ‘Ten’ occurs simply in Leviticus, XIX, 18: “Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself.”

In point of literature the Old Testament reveals Jewish history, poetry, romances and religion and philosophy. We have already taken some note of the last and talked of the history of Saul, David, and Solomon, and a bit about the prophets lashing out against the tyrants and wealth and power, and about their prophecies. The Proverbs are too well known to be quoted here. A reference, in way of enumerating them, may be made to the romances and stories that occur in the Testament. They may be listed as the fascinating story of Ruth, the tales of Isaac and Rebecca, Jacob and Rachel, Joseph and Benjamin, Samson and Delilah, Judith and Daniel, of Esther. As regards poetry, it reaches the apex in the psalms after, beginning with the ‘Song of Moses’ and the ‘Song of Deborah’. Two poems bring out the pain of love and the lament of an exile. The first runs as follows:

A bundle of myrrh is my wilt beloved unto me; he shall be all night betwix my breasts,
My beloved is unto me as a cluster of camphire in the vineyard of Engidi.
Behold, thou art fair, my love; behold, thou art fair; thou hast dove's eyes.
Behold, thou art fair, my beloved, yea, pleasant; also our bed is green....
I am the rose of Sharon, and the lily of the valleys....
Stay me with flagons, comfort me with apples, for I am sick of love....
A charge you, O ye daughters of Jerusalem, by the roes, or by the hinds of the field, that ye stir not up, nor awake my love, till he please....
My beloved is mine, and I am his; he feedeth among the lilies.
Until the day break, and the shadows flee away, turn my beloved, and be thou like a roe or a young harp upon the mountains of Bether....
Come, my beloved, let us go forth into the field, let us lodge in the villages.
Let us get up early to the vineyards; let us see if the vine flourish, whether the tender grape appear, and the pomegranates bud forth; there will I give thee my loves.
The poem occurs among the Songs of Solomon and is addressed by a woman to her love, a man. Another poem, a lament by an exile in Babylonia for his country, Israel, is a unique piece of patriotism. The longing is as intense as can be for a beloved of blood and bones:
By the rivers of Babylon, there we sat down, yea, we wept, when we remembered Zion.
We hanged our harps upon the willows in the midst thereof. For there they that carried us away captive required of us a song; and they that washed us required of us mirth, saying, Sing us one of the songs of Zion.
How shall we sing the Lord's song in a strange land?
If I forget thee, O Jerusalem, let my right hand forget her cunning.
If I do not remember thee, let my tongue cleave to the roof of my mouth; if I prefer not Jerusalem above my chief joy.

On women the Old Testament is rather hard. “One man among a thousand have I found, but a woman among all those have I not found... I find more bitter than death the woman whose heart is snares and nets, and her hands as bands; who so pleaseth God shall escape her.” Solomon warns youth against the bad woman, “for she hath cast down many wounded; yea, men strongmen have been slain by her.” But he and most of the Bible are kind to the wife and commend her for a happy life: “Rejoice with the wife of thy youth. Let he be the loving hind and the pleasant roe; let her breasts satisfy thee at all aimes; and be thy ravished always with her love.”
CHAPTER IV

Babylonia, Elam and Persia

1. BABYLONIA

Assyria had been a curse fallen on Babylonia. The military state had completely paralysed her. Once the iron grip of Assyria was removed, Babylonia again rose to eminence. Her energetic king Nebopolassar at once moved north and occupied most of the territory of Assyria, as the Medes annexed the lands north and east of Tigris.

Pharaoh Necho (609-593), finding Assyria thus fallen and Babylonia pre-occupied, smashed the forces of Josiah at Megiddo and seized the whole of Palestine and Syria. The heir to the lands of Assyria was Babylonia and Egypt's boldness could not be swallowed by her. At Carchemish the die was cast and Nebuchadnezzar, son of Nabopolassar, smote the forces of the Nile and compelled them to withdraw within the borders of Egypt. The prince had to halt his hot pursuit and hasten home for the news had come of his father's death. He returned to Babylon and secured his throne and was acknowledged ruler of the entire territory between Babylonia and Egypt. Josiah alone kept on fanning the fanaticism of Judah where the king, the people and the priests all combined to defy the conqueror. The prophet Jeremiah warned them and counselled moderation but
the new king of Judah Jeconiah, as persistent in his defiance as his father, kept the field. Nebuchadnezzar captured him and Jerusalem both and carried him with numerous inhabitants into captivity. The great king got busy building the splendid temples and planting wonderful gardens in his capital.

In the meantime Egypt decided to try conclusions with him on the issue of the Asiatic possessions. The Phoenician towns at once accepted Egypt's hegemony and, encouraged by them, king Zedekiah of Judah rose against Babylon and refused to pay tribute to her. Nebuchadnezzar crossed the Euphrates and descended on North Syria (587 B.C.) and from there sent out a force to take Jerusalem. A siege was laid, and the Pharaoh, who had retreated wisely before the redoubtable Babylonian to Egypt, advanced to relieve the city of Judah. He had to beat a retreat again and Jerusalem fell. The king was carried captive with his two sons who were slain before his eyes by the orders of Nebuchadnezzar and his own eyes were later put out. Most of the population was likewise carried captive. The miserable remnant murdered the Babylonian governor and migrated to Egypt with the prophet Jeremiah. There they were properly settled.

Sidon made peace and Tyre acknowledged the Babylonian suzerainty after a long siege. It has been supposed that Nebuchadnezzar pushed up against the Pharaoh deep into the land of Nile and reached the First Cataract. During his old age, any way, the great conqueror got mad and died in 562 B.C. He was a great builder and built the temples of E-sagila at Babylon and E-zida at Borsippa. Then he built the great wall of Babylon which his father had planned. A double massive wall now ran round the vast city and between the two and overlooking them a running fastness was erected. The great wall was further surrounded by other walls and ditches. Besides these temples
and walls the ancient city was beautified by broad streets and pretty secular buildings. The city assumed her real stature and became the proverbial Babylon in splendour and glory.

Nebuchadnezzar was followed on the throne of Babylon by common-place undistinguished monarchs and with a boy Nabopolassar’s Chaldaean dynasty terminated in 556 B.C. The priests then selected a merchant Nabunaid (Nabonidus) king of Babylon. Nabonidus was given more to a life of peace than to that of the soldier and like the princes of Nabopolassar’s family he too was a builder. He was an archaeologist and collected ancient records. He is supposed to have discovered a foundation-stone of Naram-sin and that discovery he commemorated with great zeal. He built the sun-temple, E-babbar, and the temple of Anunitum, E-ulmash, at Sippar. He was succeeded by his ill-famed unlucky son Belshazzar to warn whom the writing on the wall is supposed to have appeared. The Persians, the Iranian Aryans, had become by then all-powerful and Babylon faced its doom at their hands ‘while Belshazzar feasted’. The king fared as did his city.

2. ELAM

In the province of Fars in southern Persia there is a town called Shushan which represents the ancient city of Susa around which the very old civilization of Elam flourished. Elam was the name given to this region by the Jews due to its elevation. There archaeologists have dug out a civilization dating from about 4500 B.C. and contemporaneous with the cultures of Egypt, Sumer and the Indus Valley.

Among the finds range specimens from the Neolithic period, particularly pottery which has been classed with the most exquisite in the ancient world. Vases bearing beautiful geometrical designs and delicate animal forms are
found interspersed with tools and flints of the pre-historic man. Evidence exhumed in Elam shows that at that early age the Elamites had already emerged from their hunting and savage state and were leading a settled and civilized life domesticating animals and raising seasonal crops. They knew the use of copper and flouted pieces of jewelry finished in costly metals, bones, ivory and shells. They knew how to write and wrote their business documents in a hieroglyphic script. The Elamites had already invented the potter’s and the wagon wheel later developed in Babylonia and India.

Slowly Elam rose to power and struggled for suzerainty with Sumeria and Babylonia, sometimes getting the better of them sometimes knuckling under. We have already taken note of how Elam once conquered lower Mesopotamia and how it was itself conquered by the latter. Its centre of power, Susa, survived the attacks of Sumeria, Babylonia, and Assyria ultimately succumbing to the might of the last whose king Ashurbanipal sacked it and carried enormous riches to Nineveh. The town of Susa, raised to the ground, emerged again as the modern city of Shushan and prospered until the fourteenth century of the Christian era.

It is not possible, from the evidence available at present, to place the Medas in the motley of nations which were playing their role about the beginning of the millennium before Christ. They are first mentioned (c. 837 B.C.) in an epigraph of Shalmaneser III living in a country called Parsua, which region later gave the name to Persia or Fars, in the mountains of Kurdistan. There they were variously called, Amadai, Madai, Medes. They may have entered the western Asian politics moving to south-west from the shores of the Caspian Sea about a thousand years before Christ. The Medes have been mentioned in the Zend-Avesta and their home, as an Aryan paradise, has been extolled lying some-
where near the rivers Oxus and Jaxertes. It may have been at a very early age that one of the ancient Indo-European peoples who called them Airyas (Aryans), broke away from the Aryan settlement on the shores of the Caspian Sea and wandered through Samarkand and Bokhara and migrating farther and farther south, found a permanent home in Persia. Since the names of the gods of the Mitanni and the numerals in the Baghaz Kyo inscription of the fourteenth century B.C. have been spelt in the Iranian or the Avestan way it has been surmised that the worshippers of those gods—Mithra, Indra, Varuna and Nasatyau—may have been a branch of the Aryans living in the region called Airyana Vaejo. The Aryans now migrated westward or may have only imported the veneration of these gods from the east.

The first king of the Medes made Ecbatana, Hamadan, his capital in a valley, surrounded by snowcapped highlands where his people the Medes found enough gold and silver, copper, iron, lead and marble. There he built his great palace in an extensive and picturesque park running over a mile. The king is named Deioces about whom Herodotus furnishes us some account which makes him almost a transcendent person living beyond reach. But the Medes under his leadership and under other kings who followed him became a power to be reckoned with and the Assyrians had to undertake an expedition after expedition to curb them and keep them off their marches. Kyaxares had joined the confederacy with the Chaldeans which destroyed Nineveh. He built up an empire, extending over Assyria, Media and Persia, and followed up his victories to the gates of Sardis and had it not been for the fear of an eclipse of the sun he would sure have taken it. But fearing the eclipse as a bad omen for both the leaders of the hosts on both sides signed a treaty for keeping peace and they are said to have drunk each of his blood in token of fidelity to the terms of the peace. "To Persia the Medes gave
their Aryan language, their alphabet of thirty-six characters, their replacement of clay with parchment and pen as writing materials, their extensive use of the column in architecture, their moral code of conscientious husbandry in time of peace and limitless bravery in time of war, their Zoroastrian religion of Ahura-Mazda and Ahirman, the patriarchal family and polygamous marriage, and a body of law sufficiently like that of the latter empire to be united with it in the famous phrase of Daniel about 'the laws of the Medes and the Persians, which altereth not.'

3. PERSIA

The Beginnings

The Medes and the Persians belonged to the same Aryan or Indo-European race. They both seem to have separated somewhere in the Armenian mountains having come originally perhaps from the main Aryan knot in Southern Russia. The Medes were the western branch who made their appearance early in Assyrian politics and moved, like their Aryan ancestors the Mitannians and the Kassites, towards the west. The Persians in the meanwhile were making their way into south-eastern Iran, the vicinity of Elam. When they got there is not so easy to say but since one of their earliest kings Kurush (Cyrus) defeated the Medes and annexed their kingdom about 550 B.C. or slightly later, their first appearance in Iran cannot be placed too far back. It is possible that their earliest wave entered Iran a few centuries earlier than Kurush's date.

The Medes were supreme in the confederation which along with the Babylonians broke the power of Assyria and destroyed Nineveh. Kyaxares (Uvakhshatra), the greatest among the kings of the Medes, was succeeded after his death by his son Astyages, who was defeated and deposed (550 B.C.) by Kurush II, the Persian. It is said that Astyages had be-
come so luxury-loving that he made his nobles ride horses caparisoned in gold and 'expensive chariots from feast to feast'. It is said that he became so cruel that in a fit of anger he got served to Harpagus the limbs of his son. Harpagus in revenge brought in against Astyages the hosts of the Medes under Kyaxares and helped them trounce the effete and effeminate ruler of Ecbatana. After this the kingdom of the Medes came to an end and formed part of the growing kingdom of the Persians.

The Persian kingdom of Anshan, of which Kurush (Cyrus) and Darayavaush (Darius) both were kings, was founded by Chishpish, son of Hakhamanish or Achaimeses. The founder of the dynasty ruled sometime about the last quarter of the seventh century B.C. After Chishpish there seems to have run two lines of succession, two collateral branches of rulers, as Darius's own expression, duvitaparnam, would show. In one branch Chishpish was succeeded by Kurush I, followed by Kambujiya I (Cambyses), Kurush II the Great (Cyrus) and Kambujiya II. In the other Chishpish was followed by Ariyaramna (Ariaramnes), Arshama (Arsames), Vishtaspa (Hystaspes) and Darayavaush (Darius I). The last named came to lord the territories of both the branches of rulers when they became merged into a single state, Darayavaush counting his pedigree consecutively right from Hakhamanish through all the succeeding steps of the other branch as well and calling himself the ninth.

Chishpish seized Elam perhaps during the confusion following the conquest of Ashurbanipal. Slowly the entire country passed into the hands of the Persians, who took over the ancient towns of the Medes, Ecbatana and Susa. After the deposition of their king Astyages the Medes accepted Kurush naturally and he too made no distinction between the Medes and the Persians and perfectly welded them into a single people.

It is said that it was about this time that Zarathustra,
Zoroaster, made his appearance. A much earlier date, even earlier than 1000 B.C., is sometimes suggested for this great prophet, but accepting the saner view, he may with ample reason be placed in the 6th century B.C. In that century all Asia seems to have been cast in a religious ferment. Great religious movements under great thinkers and popular leaders sprang up and thoughts fairly revolutionary and opposed to the ancient and the orthodox made their appearance. It was at this time that Mahavira and Buddha lived and preached in India; it was now that Confucius and Lao Tzu elaborated their ideas in China; and it was about then that the prophets in Palestine disgorged their angry words of fire. No wonder that the spirit of the times took shape in Iran also and Zoroaster appeared with his militant ethics. There is an important tradition that fixes his birth to 599 B.C. He is supposed to have commenced his teaching in his fortieth year in Khorasan. There at Kishmar, in the district of Turshiz, in order to commemorate the conversion to his new faith of King Vishtasp (Gush-tasp), father of Darius I, he planted the famous cypress tree which was said to have lived until A.D. 861, when the Caliph el-Mutawakkil had it felled and taken to Samarra on the Tigris, to be utilized in the construction of his palace. Darayavaush, the son of the first royal convert to Zoroastrianism, seems to have been a devout Zoroastrian, as is particularly suggested by his campaign against ‘lies’, perhaps the lies of the Magian form of worship, in his Behistun inscription.

Of the old Aryan gods of the north-west area of the Mitanniains, viz. Mithra, Indra, Varuna, and the Nasatyatwins, only Mithra and Varuna had been retained in the Zoroastrian religion, the rest were not only not worshipped but had come to signify demoniac powers right opposed to the divine. In the Avesta Indra and the Asvins (Nasatyatwins) have become evil demons. They may even have for-
med, along with the Magian gods, the ‘lies’ of Darayavaush. Herodotus describes the peculiar Zoroastrian custom of exposing the bodies of the dead to birds and dogs before burial. Is is obvious therefore that the times were favourable to the spread of the new cult and that Darius I, the son of the first convert to Zoroastrianism, turned out to be a most devout Zoroastrianist. It has been rightly suggested that Darayavaush received his great fervour and inspiration from his uncompromising master and that the rise of his vast dominions was incidental to the zeal infused into the conqueror by his extraordinary contemporary.

Zarathustra and his Faith

Looking through the haze of legends what one finds is that Zarathustra was born in a priestly family, on whom wisdom dawned early, who received knowledge through Avesta, which was supposed to have been given to him by his ‘Lord of Light’ Ahura-Mazda himself, which he preached despite great persecution, and after living a long life who was consumed by fire. He lived and preached in Aryanavaejo, the ancient ‘home of the Aryans’ and his teachings were defended and accepted by a great prince of Iran called Vishtaspa or Hystaspes, who was his first convert.

Zarathustra released the Persians from the worship of animals, the bull-god Haoma, the sun-god Mithra and goddess Anaita—the gods of the Magi priests—and gave them one god Ahura-Mazda, the Great Asura, the Lord of Light, whose other gods are mere manifestations. Darius I made Zoroastrianism the religion of the state.

Avesta is the collection of the preaching and prayers of Zarathustra. Only a small fraction of it now remains. Perhaps originally it had contained twenty-one books called Naskns, one of which, the Vendidad, is saved intact, the rest survive only fragments. Much of the Rigveda is reflected in the Avesta, both in its language and contents of divinity
and so some scholars suppose the work of the great prophet inspired by the Vedas. The Babylonian legend about creation, the earthly paradise, the Flood—all appear in the Avesta. Its own concept of the truth is that "The world is conceived in dualistic terms as the stage of a conflict lasting twelve thousand years, between the god Ahura-Mazda and the devil Ahirman; purity and honesty are the greatest of the virtues, and will lead to everlasting life; the dead must not be buried or burned, as by the obscene Greeks or Hindus, but must be thrown to the dogs or to the birds of prey."

Ahura-Mazda is said to clothe himself with the solid vault of the firmament as his raiment, his body being the light and the sovereign glory and the sun and the moon being his eyes. He has seven qualities—Light, Good Mind, Right, Dominion, Piety, Well-being, and Immortality. These seven qualities preached by the Master were later turned into angels and good spirits and their evil counterparts creating all sin, called daevas, with Ahirman as their leader, were conceived as their opposites. Ahura-Mazda was the Light, Ahirman the Lie.

The Avesta or Zarathustra prescribes a code of morals for man. The simple code is "That nature alone is good which shall not do unto another whatever is not good unto its own self." Man's duty is said to be threefold: "To make him who is an enemy a friend; to make him who is wicked righteous; and to make him who is ignorant learned." The Zoroastrian principle is wholly ethical. Piety is considered the greatest virtue and honour and honesty in action and speech are the chief modes of character.

The Magi or the ancient priest class absorbed much of Zoroastrianism which weakened and faded away. The Sassanid rulers sought to revive it but it was ultimately destroyed by the Muslim invasion. Zoroastrianism now survives in a small community living in the province of Fars
and among the Parsis of India who took asylum there when they were persecuted at home.

The Empire

The deposition of Astyages gave Croesus of Lydia the signal to move eastward. He consulted the oracles of Greece and crossed the Halys and seized Cappadocia. Kurush II too moved westward in the autumn of 547 B.C. and fought the indecisive battle of Pteria. Croesus retreated supplicating help from Sparta, Egypt, and Babylonia where Nabonidus was ruling. But Kurush gave him no time and before succour could be received from anywhere Kurush advanced in winter and fell upon him, annihilating his forces and taking Croesus prisoner. He was taken to Persia where, it is said, he lived like a noble at the Persian Court.

In those short engagements the Europeans saw that the Orientals were superior to them in warfare, particularly in the methods of siege which they had learnt from the Assyrians. They had brought science into the field. The subjugation of the Ionian Greeks and Teians was so swift and thorough that they even thought of leaving their country and migrating wholesale to Sardinia. Indeed, the helplessness proved beyond hope. Next followed the submission of the Milesians, of Caria and Lycia. Lycians resisted the invader smartly but all opposition proved futile before the Persians and the Persian general Harpagos completed his conquest in no time.

Kurush then turned to Babylonia. Its southern part had already been taken and a Persian governor posted at Uruk. Now the final blow came in 539 B.C. when Gaubāruva, the Persian satrap of Assyria and Gutium, defeated the Babylonians at Opis. Belshazzar commanded the Babylonians. He was perhaps killed and Nabonidus fled from Sippar to Borsippa where he died. The citadel of Babylon
held on for sometime more. It was stormed in the presence of Kurush and fell to his sword. He entered Babylon in triumph and was welcomed by the priests and people as their deliverer. The Babylonian monarchy came to an end.

Nabonidus had made himself hateful to the priests who had resented his antiquarian zeal for collecting the gods from all over the country and they applauded Kurush, who, in usual accordance with the Persian tolerance of the religions of the subject races, sent back the images to their shrines.

Phoenician cities too readily submitted and so did Palestine where Kurush permitted the establishment of a Jewish community at Jerusalem. Kurush then conquered the Sakas of the east and thus extended his dominions over the region beyond the Jaxartes.

Kurush was a great ruler who built up an empire extending from the Jaxartes and the Indus in the east to the Mediterranean and the Aegian Seas in the west, and from the Caspian Sea in the north to the Persian Gulf in the south. He put an end to the Semitic rule over the west which had endured for more than a thousand years. He was noted for his social justice and he ruled his extensive dominion, which was also the first real empire of the Indo-Europeans, with generosity and put the different peoples of his empire at par with one another. He respected others' temples and their gods and helped the shrines ruined by the Assyrians and the Chaldeans. He liberated the Israelites from the Babylonian captivity and gave them gold and money to rebuild their temples of Solomon at Jerusalem. He pardoned his enemies and rescued Croesus from the funeral pyre and made him one of the grandees of his court. He was the founder of the great Achaemenid Dynasty of Persia and his figure was considered a model for masculine beauty. A number of legends grew round his name in Greece. Both Herodotus and Xenophon wrote about him and the latter even com-
posed a manual of military art and entitled it, after Kurush's name, *Cyropædia*, evidently incorporating the Persian emperor's tactics of his conquering campaigns.

Kambujiya (Cambyses) II was enthroned king of the Persians when his father Kurush was slain battling with an obscure tribe, the Massagetae, on the southern shores of the Caspian Sea. Kambujiya was such a contrast to his father. After killing his brother Smerdis he proceeded to conquer Egypt. His army of fifty thousand men perished in the desert, but although he failed to take Carthage due to the treachery of his navy manned by Phoenicians, he took Memphis and he wreaked vengeance on the Egyptians for his disappointment and failure. He plunged his dagger into their sacred bull, destroyed temples and desecrated tombs by exhuming their mummies. He killed his wife and sister Roxana, and his own son Prexaspes and buried a dozen Persian nobles alive. He ordered Croesus to be put to death and then felt sorry for condemning that Greek to whom his father had been so generous. Later he rejoiced that he had not been put to death but executed the officials who had failed to carry out his orders. Getting epileptic he died on the way to Persia from Egypt. It was said that he killed himself. Even before his death there had been bloody uprisings all over his empire which had actually been furthered by palace revolutions and conspiracies.

**Egypt and Persia**

Before recording further facts of the Persian history it would be more logical to state the relations of Persia with Egypt. Amasis the pharaoh of Egypt did not oppose Persia as long as he lived. Persia was moving along her course of conquest as planned by her great rulers and the subjugation of Egypt was their next step. Egypt lay palsy-striken and her deserting mercenaries could not save her from the disciplined
Persian forces who came to conquer the country. A short engagement was fought at Pelusium where Psamatic III, son of Amasis, was defeated. He fled to Memphis. Kambujiya II followed him there, took Memphis, deposed the pharaoh and sent him to Persia, and himself ascended the throne. This was the first time a foreigner had sat on the Egyptian throne, a thousand years after the hated Hyksoses. The secret of holding Egypt lay in sitting tight in its throne and in accepting its gods. Kambujiya did both by getting formally consecrated and by offering sacrifices publicly to Egyptian gods. He assumed even the Egyptian name which was given to him by Egyptian officials. After accepting the submission of Cyrene, the vassal of Egypt, he sent an expedition to conquer the distant Carthage which, however, perished in the desert. He had already moved south as far as Aswan and lived for sometime at Thebes. Now he proceeded to capture Napata and restore Nubia to Egypt, but the barren region of the Second Cataract proved too severe for his forces that were ruined. He ascribed his disasters to the sorceries of Egypt and he ran amok outraging the people and their gods. In the meanwhile news came from Persia that the false Smerdis had rebelled and Kambujiya hastened home leaving charge of Egypt to Satrap Aryandes.

Bardiya (Smerdis), the brother of Kambujiya, had been secretly murdered by him before his march on Egypt. Now the nobles of the court, hearing of the king's disasters in Egypt, placed a false Bardiya on the Persian throne, and the people accepted him for they had no knowledge of the murder of the real Bardiya. Kambujiya was crossing Syria with Darius, son of Hystaspes, when he suddenly died. Darius, however, pushed on carrying the body of the king and was welcomed by the nobles who knew the truth. Gaumata, the false Bardiya, was a Magian and had assumed royal dignity and was living in a castle of Nisara. Darius attacked and killed him and was himself raised to the throne of
the childless Kambujiya, his own father, ruling in Parthia and Hyrcania, tendering his allegiance to his son.

Following the trouble at home Satrap Aryandes had sought to become independent in Egypt. He had carried the Persian arms to Cyrene and Benghazi. Darius came to Egypt in 517 B.C. to complete the conquest of Egypt which his predecessor had begun. As a first step he executed Aryandes and then set to reconciling the outraged and wronged Egyptians with various measures of peace. He took the crown with an Egyptian name and accepted the Egyptian gods. He built the famous temple of Hibis in el-Kharga where he also constructed subterranean conduits for irrigation.

**Darayavaush I**

Darayavaush I (Darius) had ascended the throne of Persia but matters did not prove easy and he had to exert himself first to suppress and win opposition. There came up considerable opposition and Babylonia, Elam, Armenia, Media, Egypt, even the home province of Pars at once revolted against his authority. But it must be said to the credit of the great genius of Darius that he did not swerve from the danger but brought each of the provinces back to the empire and settled accounts with everyone of his enemies.

Babylonia rose first under a certain Nebuchadnezzar III. Two engagements and a siege operation carried the capital and the usurper was apprehended and slain. A little later the city revolted again under a certain Aratha but was soon brought under control and disaffection rooted out of the land. In order to avoid any more disaffection he crucified three thousand of Babylon's leading citizens which of his measures proved successful. Next followed Elam where a Persian had styled himself an Elamite prince and donned the Elamite name of Ummanish. His insurrection was easily put down and the Elamites disappeared from
history. A Mede called Fravartish declared himself Khshathrita, a scion of the family of Kyaxares, and essayed to restore the old Median kingdom. He was caught and brutally executed. In the home province Vahyazdata held out long and the king had to bring all his resources to bear him down. Egypt too was brought to book, as we have seen, and its satrap Aryandes beheaded. This stupendous task was accomplished within the first few years of his reign and his victories over his provinces and enemies well deserved a mention. They were recorded on a rock-cliff overhanging the main route from Mesopotamia into Presia through the Zagros, in an inscription on the face of which Darius was represented with the conquered rebels lying bound. This is the famous Behistun inscription which was first copied by Sir Henry Rawlinson in 1837 at great risk of his life. It was written in Persian, Susian, and Babylonian cuneiform and afforded the clue from which the cuneiform writing was deciphered and the treasures of the tells and archives laid bare to us. Along with the famous Rosetta Stone, which made the decipherment of the Egyptian hieroglyphics possible, the Behistun epigraphs furnish us with a key to the understanding of the entire Middle East history.

West now drew the attention of the great king. Samos was conquered by his generals in 516. The Sakas of the steppes, chiefly under their leader Shunka, had been giving considerable trouble to the northern frontiers of the empire, and Darius, determined to put an end to their raids, decided to find them in their own habitats of southern Russia. He resolved to take an expedition into Europe and arrived at Bosphorus where he summoned the Ionian tyrants to meet the royal army with their own. They came with an Athenian despot, a fleet was fashioned, and the army sailed along the course of the Danube and for the first time an Asian expedition entered Europe proper. The king himself pursued
fruitlessly the Scythian prince who kept on evading him and ultimately put his efforts to naught. The emperor returned to Persia while his general subdued Thrace and received the allegiance of Macedonia.

About this time Athens declared her fidelity to the democratic principles of Solon and proclaimed a war on tyrants. First she compromised with Persia in a number of ways. But soon the final break came following the Ionian revolt and the burning and sack of Sardis when she threw in her lot with her kin against the tyrant of the orient. Darius ordered her destruction and the first expedition in 492 B.C. was the result. Proceeding under Marduniya by land and sea and through Thrace it was wrecked by a storm off Mt. Athos and the Persian fleet was destroyed. Then followed a second expedition under Datis and Artapherne with Hippias helping them. Eretria soon fell to the advancing army and it sent a shudder through Athens. Help was sought of Sparta and the great Olympian runner ran his maddest to carry the news of the impending danger to the premier city of Greece. But the Lacedaemonians arrived too late for the Athenians had already fought and vanquished the enemy. Great numbers of the enemy lay dead on the field of battle. The Spartans congratulated the conquerors and went away as they had come without striking a blow. The Persian army had landed by the coast of Marathon, an open sea-plain, where one of the greatest and most decisive battles of mankind had been fought. The army of the greatest empire of the age was pitted against the patriotism of the little city of Athens and of her friend Plataea. And when the Athenians closed in combat the enemy was struck by the resistance and shaken by the attack. They charged the great foe at a run and dispersed the Persians, who taken by panic, rushed to their ships and sailed off with those on the board. Those who could not reach the ships were massacred on the field. Six thousand is stated to have been the
number of the invaders dead as against one hundred and ninety-two. This was a great event for Athens, and Greece, and for Europe and the world, but for Iran it was not perhaps so much an event of importance. After all at the far end of the extensive empire a few generals had lost a battle in which a few soldiers of the vast Persian militia had been killed. All the same, Darius prepared to attack Athens again and annihilate the daresome city. But about the same time Egypt revolted under Khabhash (486 B.C.) and drew the attention of the emperor in that direction. Right when Darius was ready to proceed on his punitive expedition to Egypt, he died in 485 B.C. and for the moment both Egypt and Athens were spared the fate they later met.

Darayavaush was a great king, great as a conqueror and great as an organizer and administrator of empire. For the administration of the empire the vast diminions were divided into satrapies or provinces, twenty-one (including Thrace) in number. Each satrapy was the charge of a satrap (Kshatrapa) who was a civil political officer assisted in his work by a general who looked after the military matters and a secretary. All the three were independent in their respective spheres. One of the satrapies, the twentieth, was India from where great weights of gold dust were received by the imperial exchequer. Coins were in circulation and they were of a fixed standard imitating the Lydian and other Greek models. The gold coin ‘daric’ bore the emperor’s name and was the last word on the art of exquisite coining. It bore the device of the running Persian archer.

Travelling commissioners were the very ‘eyes and ears’ of the king. Many of the provinces and kingdoms were left to the charge of local leaders and kings. This kind of local autonomy coupled with the centralized power in the hands of a benevolent despot was unique and worked most perfectly. Darius left the peoples and races completely free in matters of religious belief and modes of worship.
His policy of tolerance was much ahead of time and gained the confidence of the most alien of his subjects. The system endured till the end of the empire in the third quarter of the 4th century B.C. It developed out of the Assyrian arrangement of provinces but was totally different in the spirit and in the result. The appointment of a civil satrap to the charge of a province made all the difference and freed the population from the ruthlessness of the Assyrian military governors. The empire was one of the most extensive absolutely unprecedented in that age. It was as extensive as the Egyptian during the tallest conquerors of Egypt with Asia up to the Pamirs and the Caspian, Arabia, Asia Minor, Ionia and several islands, part of extreme southeastern Europe and the Russian steppes added to it. From the Danube to the Jaxartes and from the Caspian and south Russian steppes to the borders of Nubia in Africa ran the marches of the empire of Darius the Great, at once the model and terror to the tyrants of the west.

Persia and Greece

Khshayarsha (Xerxes) next came to the throne. But his first duty lay towards Egypt and he took measures to put down the revolt of Khabbash. Babylon too had shown signs of unrest and had to be put in its place. Freed from these affairs, Xerxes proceeded to teach a lesson to Athens and to avenge his father's privation on the field of Marathon. The march of the enormous host began in 480 B.C.

In the meanwhile the approaching danger brought all the Greeks together excepting a few who had already submitted to the yoke of Persia. A congress banned all civil wars and exhorted all the Greeks to combine to resist the Persians who had massed men on an unprecedented scale.

Xerxes crossed the Dardanelles by a bridge of boats. Along the coast moved a huge fleet carrying supplies. The Persian monarch himself was leading his enormous hosts.
This time the Spartans were not slow and fourteen hundred of their men, steel cast into human flesh, under Leonidas stood waiting to do their job at the narrow pass of Thermopylae, a mountainous district leading from Thessaly into the southern provinces. The Greeks intended to send reinforcements before the Persians arrived. But the Persians arrived a little too soon and the little force of the Spartans was faced with annihilation. Some of the Greeks, who were not Spartans, seeing the futility of the resistance decided to retreat, but Leonidas said: "Retreat if you wish to, but as for me and my Spartans, we have been sent to hold the pass, and here we will remain." Not a man moved.

Then began a battle which will be remembered while the world lasts. For two days armours clanged, swords whirred and spears smote, but the enemy could not get the better of the little band of men that held him at that historic spot. On the evening of the second day the traitor Ephialtes guided a force of Persians through the hills and the brave Leonidas was attacked in the rear. Leonidas at once dismissed all his allies save four hundred Thebans and seven hundred Thespians, and with his three hundred Spartans prepared for the worst. Getting desperate, he sallied forth with his fourteen hundred and fell upon the mass of men. When night came Leonidas and his faithful patriots lay dead under the corpses of their enemies. Every man of the fourteen hundred was killed. The pass lay open unguarded and the Persians entered Thebes and Athens. Thebes submitted to Persians and accepted their terms. The Athenian garrison was thrown from the rocks of the Acropolis and the city was burned. All seemed lost and the Athenians fled to the island of Salamis and on board the ships which Themistokles had prevailed upon Athens to build in the teeth of opposition. On the 20th of September of the year 480 Themistokles forced the Persian fleet to give battle in the bay of Salamis and destroyed it. Xerxes
was watching the fray from his golden throne on the slopes of Aigaleos. With growing horror the omnipotent sovereign saw the disaster and, getting frantic, rent his robes and departed hastily from the scene. Greece was saved.

Xerxes retreated to Susa with one half of his army leaving the other half behind under Marduniya. The Spartans now emerged from the safe shelter of the wall which they had built across the Isthmus of Corinth and marched under their leader Pausanias against the Persian general. About one hundred thousand men attacked the enemy near Plataea and routed the Persian hosts.

After this war Persia sank into a confusion of domestic troubles. Xerxes himself was murdered in 465 by a courtier Artabanus who in his turn was murdered by Artaxerxes I which was a grave signal for revolts. Revellions broke out in Egypt, Syria and Media. Xerxes had been the handsomest man of his empire. He mated with a hundred women and created an unrivalled record of sensuality and dissoluteness. Although, every inch a king, his vanity became unbearable to men around him. His murder was its natural result.

And yet the empire of Darius held on for a century and a quarter. Intrigues and disaffections shook the joints of the vast realm. Artaxerxes I, the murderer of Artabanus, the murderer of Xerxes, died after a long reign. Xerxes II, his successor only for two weeks, met his end at the hands of his half-brother Sogdianus, himself murdered after six months by Darius II. Darius, after destroying his rebel Terituchmus and cutting his wife to pieces and burning alive his mother’s sisters and brothers, was succeeded by his son Artaxerxes II. Artaxerxes ruled for long and suppressed the rebellions of his brother and son, one after another, killing them both but himself died a broken heart when his other son Ochus also conspired and took up arms against him. Ochus after ruling for twenty years was poisoned by
his general Bagoas, who first put Ochus's son Arses on the throne and to sword when he became inconvenient. Last he gave the throne after murdering Arses's children to Codomannus who ruled the Persian empire and was called Darius III. Darius III was the last ruler of the family who had seen the falling off of the provinces and who now witnessed the ruin of his empire. Alexander the Macedonian first beat him at Issus in 333 B.C. and again at Arbela two years after. Darius fled the field and escaped north towards the country of the Medes. He was pursued, was overtaken at dawn, dying in his chariot, murdered by his own people, perhaps at the hands of Greek assassins whom Alexander punished with death. After finally defeating Darius at Guagamela, where he had crossed a stream on a bridge of Persian corpses, the conqueror returned with honour Darius's harem retaining for himself only one of his daughters whom he married.

Alexander had already captured Babylon, Susa and Persepolis. At the last named city, the capital of the empire, an event happened which shamed the valour of the Greeks. In the midst of a drinking bout maddened by nocturnal carousals and vicious romping, the conqueror rose at the incitement offered by the courtesan Thais, his pretty keep, snatched a torch from one of the attendants and set fire to the great palace of Darius, the king of kings. The city burned as Athens had burnt a century and a quarter before. And perhaps that was the purpose of this arson. A recompense of queer sanity!

Nothing remained of the palace that Darius built or of the extensive domains of the Persians that was stretching across the Middle East from end to end. The immense empire tottered to a fall and was lost in its own ruins.

But the empire did not die without leaving its traces behind. Alexander thought of it as a model and Chandra-gupta Maurya followed its despotism in his own plan of
building an empire, the shortcomings of the Persian organization set right by his great minister Chanakya. Another and a more distinct influence left behind was of the Persepolitan architect and sculptor. The Asokan monuments breathe the execution and finish of the Persian pattern, its polish and shine, which India never knew before, never followed after. No wonder too, for the contact between the two countries had been close. Indian mercenaries had fought the Greeks and shared the defeat of Xerxes and the Punjab had formed the Twentieth Satrapy of the empire of Darius the Great. His voice, though calmed by love and urged by human welfare, set the tone of Asokan edicts, the first to be inscribed in India.

**PERSIAN LIFE AND CULTURE**

Persians of the Aryan stock, who took over from the Medes, were fair and tall, handsome and hardy. Their men put on a turban or fillet, an undergarment, a short tunic and a long toga sort of dress with long sleeves, a waistband and sandals. The king wore an embroidered dress and a tall cap and red-buttoned shoes. Women wore almost the same dress except a slit over the breast. Men wore long curly hair and beard and both men and women used creams, unguents and perfumes. There were cosmeticians who helped make the person of their clients presentable.

People of early times, being akin to the Indo-Aryans, spoke a collateral branch of Sanskrit or a language which with Sanskrit had a common original base. The earliest known Iranian language is of the **Zend-Avesta** which is so similar to the language of the **Rigveda** that one knowing one can easily comprehend the other. This, however, does not mean that they belong to the same age. Only serving the ends of religion they have not much changed. The Persian is the language of Darius’s inscription and is the mother of Pahlavi from which the present Persian is derived. For writing the Persians used
the cuneiform for their epigraphs and the Aramaic for their documents. From the cuneiform syllabary of three hundred characters they formed their cuneiform alphabet of thirty six letters.

People's stable food was barley and wheat and much wine was drunk. Whole animals were roasted and served. One kind of drink, much spoken about and akin to the Rigvedic Soma was haoma, squeezed out of a plant the identity of which has not been established either in Iran or in India.

Persians were the innovators of the postal system which was the quickest in the ancient world. The mail was carried by relays of horses posted at every fourth mile, which was also a station in the road system. There was a network of roads connecting all the important towns of the extensive empire, one running from Susa to Sardis measured fifteen hundred miles. One joined Susa and India through Afghanistan. Herodotus writes that "there are inns and royal post-stations at the end of every fourth parasang" (1-3.4 miles).

Persians cared little for trade. Indeed they looked down upon it and it was the Phoenicians who bought and sold goods for them. The life in Persia was political and military. The king, Khshathra (Sans. Kshatriya, warrior), the head of the state, in his imperial status came to be called the 'King of Kings' (shahanshah), was absolute and uncontrolled in his power. The eunuchs who guarded the extensive harems wove the intricate nets and snares of the conspiracies and plots with the queens and the grandees of the imperial court. The army, standing and militia together, was huge including queens, concubines, prostitutes, maids, slaves and eunuchs. Horses, elephants and chariots were used by the soldiers who carried weapons of offence and defence like bows and arrows, scimitars, javelins, daggers, pikes, slings, shields, helmets, leather cuirasses and coats of mail.
First priests worked as judges, then a High Court of justice with seven members was established, but the king was always the last court of appeal and his will commanded the justice. All kinds of punishments were awarded to culprits from flogging, branding, maiming and mutilating to poisoning, crucifying, impaling, hanging, stoning, burying alive and the terrible death by means of boats.

The empire was divided into satrapies or provinces, each under a satrap (kshatrapa). There were twenty satrapies—Egypt, Palestine, Syria, Phoenicia, Lydia, Phrygia, Ionia, Cappadocia, Cilicia, Armenia, Assyria, the Caucasus, Babylon, Media, Persia, modern Afghanistan and Baluchistan, India west of the Indus (part of Punjab and Sind), Sogdiana, Bactria, and the land of the Massagetae and other tribes.

The Persian empire was the most well-governed among the empires of the ancient world. There was little discrimination between nation and nation and all the ethnic units were happy and satisfied under the Achaemenian monarchs. The laws were indeed harsh but they checked crimes and ensured security in the distant parts of the empire.

The social life of the ancient Persians deserves a few paragraphs. Already a reference has been made to their food and dress. Here their manners and morals may be described. Persians, both the aristocrats and commoners were affable, gentle, generous, warm-hearted and hospitable. Equals embraced and kissed each other, to persons higher in rank they made deep obeisance, to those lower in rank they offered their cheek and to the common folk they only bowed. Cleanliness was a great asset and both the social order and the scripture were stern about it. Washing was imperative.

Regarding abduction Herodotus writes: “To carry off women by violence the Persians think is the act of wicked men; but to trouble one’s self about avenging them when so carried off is the act of foolish men; and to pay no regard to them when carried off is the act of wise men; for it is
clear that if they had not been willing, they could not have been carried off.” Writing about morality, the Greek historian says that the Persians “have learnt from the Greeks a passion for boys.” Herodotus is not always reliable unless confirmed by independent evidence, but this assertion of the historian appears correct as the Zend-Avesta too stigmatizes sodomy and repeatedly condemns those who practise it saying that there is no atonement for it and that ‘nothing can wash it away’. A home with a wife and children was the ideal. The Avesta says: “The man who has a wife is far above him who lives in continence, he who keeps a house is far above him who has none; he who has children is far above him who has none; he who has riches is far above him who has none.”

Polygamy and concubinage was common. Ordinarily people married out of the family but there were instances of brothers marrying sisters, fathers marrying daughters, mothers marrying sons. Maspero cites cases. But such cases were generally confined to the Magi.

High class women moved out in curtained litters, but women of the lower classes moved about freely. But this was so only after Darius I. Before his time she moved freely without purdah, owned and managed property.

Iranians excelled in the architectonic art. In architecture they developed a special style. They built most magnificent palaces. Persepolis was the most favoured spot where palace after palace rose, one following ever grander than the one preceding. Darius and his successors erected palaces unparalleled in the ancient world. The palaces are gone but the great stairs leading to the top of the plinth, the platform on which the palaces were built and the great columns on which the roof rested are still there to give an idea of the imposing structure that stood there. The stairs were so broad that ten horsemen could mount them abreast. The platform that bore the palaces was fifteen hundred feet long.
ten hundred feet broad and twenty to fifty feet high. Where
on the top the two stairs running on either side met there
on the platform stood the great gate flanked by columns of
black stone topped by winged human-headed bulls sitting
back to back. The Great Hall, Chehil Minor, of Xerxes I,
was raised in seventy-two columns, with its antechambers,
covers an area of a hundred thousand square feet. The
stairs leading to the Great Hall had side parapets, their
faces covered with the finest bas-reliefs. Thirteen columns
sixty-four feet high, fluted and grooved, their bases resembli-
ing bells, are still in their places. Their capitals were
"surmounted by the four quarters of two bulls or unicorns
upon whose necks, joined back to back rested the crossbeam
or the architrave... The door-jambs and window-frames
were of ornamented black stone that shone like ebony, the
walls were of brick, but they were covered with enamelled
tiles painted in brilliant panels of animals and flowers; the
columns, pilasters and steps were of fine white, limestone
or hard blue marble." Behind this structure there stood the
'Hall of a Hundred Columns' of which there remains nothing
but a single pillar and the outlines of the general plan.

Like Persepolis the ancient capital Susa too was an
architectural complex where Artaxerxes I and II built their
palaces on a large scale. There the brick-work in the in-
terior was covered by the finest frieze, 'the frieze of Archers,'
finished in glazed tiles.

The tombs of the Persian emperors too are some of the
architectural wonders: Kurush I and Kambuiiya I built
their tombs and palaces there. The palaces are now complete-
ly gone except for a few mutilated columns. A door-jamb
bears the relief of Kurush I's figure. His tomb stands thirty-
five feet high on a terraced base closely. Darius I erected his
tomb at Naksh-i-Rustam, near Persepolis, by cutting the
face of a mountain. The king is figured adoring Ahura-
Mazda and the moon on a dais which is shown supported by
the subject peoples of Persia.
Persian architecture borrowed on the one hand from the unbroken chain of art produced by the Assyrians, Babylonians and the Egyptians and bequeathed its remarkable heritage to the posterior nations on the other. Its beneficiaries in the west were the Greeks and in the east the Mauryan Indians. Just as the Babylonian and Assyrian architects and sculptors had finished the palaces and the tombs of the Persian kings, the Persian craftsmen had planned and executed Asokan columns superimposed by wonderfully sculpted animals.

Some of the furnishings in the Persian homes give an impression of the luxuries the rich lived in Darius's Persia. Their houses were laid in spacious parks studded with beautiful gardens. The furniture was rich and exquisite and its delicate pieces were inlaid with silver, gold and precious stones. The coaches were covered with costly coverlets and the floors were carpeted with rugs resplendent with the brightest colours. The walls were decorated with costly hangings. The luxurious living of the kings and their nobles is demonstrated in the utensils of gold and silver they used, in the endless jewelry bearing pearls, rubies, emeralds and other gems. The thrones were made of solid gold studded with gems. They were covered with golden canopies supported by pillars of gold. By the time of Xerxes I these luxuries had become universal in the life of the grandees of the court, the aristocrats of the rural areas and the wealthy merchants of the cities. Such living was bound to result in the effeminacy of the leaders of the nation which brought about the fall of the Persian monarchs at the hands of the Greeks and Macedonian barbarians. Those barbarians themselves on conquering Persia had been so charmed by the Persians' ways of living that they adopted them, their leaders Alexander not excepted, although they had shown little scruple while consigning the palaces of Persepolis to flames,
CHAPTER V

Aegean Civilization

Beginnings

Prior to the invasion of the Classical Greeks there vegetated towns and cities in the islands and along the coast of the Aegean Sea. Archaeological excavations in some of them have laid bare the traces of a civilization of the bronze age, greatly developed, urban, and coeval with the cultures of Egypt and Sumer. The main centres of this civilization were Knossos in the island of Crete, Mycenae on the mainland of Greece and Troy in Asia Minor. In all of these places buildings and palaces have been found. The earliest centre of this culture is supposed to have been Knossos where palaces fitted with running water, bathrooms, banquet-halls with beautiful frescoes, and winding staircases have been discovered. Since the civilization arose in the island of Crete it is sometimes called Cretan culture, as also Minoan after the appellation of its kings who were called Minos as the Egyptian kings were called Pharaoh. Some people call it even Mycenaean after the name of the ancient and ruined city of Mycenae in the peninsula of southern Greece.

The makers of this great Aegean civilization, which had its beginnings in the fourth millennium B.C. and which met a violent end about the middle of the second millennium
B.C., were southerners. In fact the civilization developed out of the Neolithic and those who were the builders of the Neolithic culture of Crete and traded in that early age with Egypt have been connected in blood and language with the Basques to the west and the Berbers and Egyptians to the east. Perhaps originally they came from Egypt as is suggested from their dress of a simple waistcloth so common with the ancient Egyptians. They had nothing to do with the white races of Europe and are supposed to have arrived in the island of Crete from north Africa while they were still using stone implements. They were conversant with the use of bronze as well as copper and among them the use of the alloy soon superceded that of the pure metal. We know that the Egyptians used copper alone until the advent of the Middle Kingdom when bronze also came to be used. The alloy, however, came to the knowledge of the Egyptians much later. The art of alloying copper with tin seems to have come to Babylonia, Greece and Egypt from the east where tin was available and was known. We know that the people of the Indus Valley civilization made use of this alloy. The early use of metal contributed greatly to the speedy growth of the Aegean civilization which wears such a halo of artistic splendour.

It developed its own art of writing also. Like the script of the Indus Valley this too remains to be deciphered. This want of decipherment does not permit us to be sure of the strata in time and the knowledge of Cretan history naturally remains imperfect.

But the remains of the monuments of Crete, Troy and Mycenae have thrown such light on the contemporary times that it has been possible to form an idea of the various stages of development of that civilization. The credit of the excavations and of the classification of those stages in relation to the periods of time goes to Sir Arthur Evans. The discovery of the Aegean or Cretan civilization is another
wonder brought to light by the spade of the archaeologist. The father of archaeology, Schliemann, who excavated Troy, getting evidence that Candia (the modern capital Heracleum) might conceal a civilization under its surface, sought to buy the site and opened negotiations with the owners. But since a bargain between the two could not be struck Schliemann gave up his efforts and the credit had to go to another archaeologist Dr. Arthur Evans. Making sure of his site by means of some amulets bearing hieroglyphics, Evans put his spade to the ground and turned upon the surface the ruins of Knossos, the ancient capital, in 1900, among them the so-called Labyrinth and the rich complex of the palace of Minos. A fire, that destroyed the palaces, preserved the inscribed tablets and seals, thousands in number, bearing pictographs or lineal hieroglyphs not yet deciphered. Evans has been able to construct a chronological plan of three successive periods, each of which again is further divided into three sub-periods, viz. the Early Minoan Period, the Middle Minoan Period and the Late Minoan Period, each of these having its own First, Second and Third sub-periods.

These periods and sub-periods have been formed as a result of very careful study of the monuments of prehistoric Crete and Greece and of Egypt. These have been synchronized with corresponding periods of Egypt which in sequence of time stand on a more solid footing. For example, in Sir Arthur Evans' view, the end of the Old Kingdom in Egypt corresponds to the First Early Minoan period, the Middle Minoan to the Middle Kingdom, and the First and Second Late Minoan periods to the Eighteenth Dynasty; the Third Late Minoan period likewise was perhaps contemporary with Rameses III (C. 1200 B.C.) of Egypt. As the result of this effective synchronism a working basis has been found for the chronology of the Minoan civilization. Its end came about 1400 B.C. or a little later when the Achaean Greeks and earthquakes combined to destroy this
marvellous civilization which had enjoyed the amenities of comparatively much modern times.

**The Pre-Kingdom Stage**

The Early and Middle Minoan periods were using metal in a considerable measure. Bronze came to be used very early, then followed copper. Short daggers and long swords came to be forged from these metals. The Aegean population seems to have been almost as well equipped in the implements of war as the Babylonians were. Metals ordinary and precious, replaced the clay material for making vases. Wares of silver, electron and gold have been unearthed in the excavations and are clear evidence of the material amenities of the times. Earthenware also came to be modelled after the metallic pattern. The ceramic art had reached a high stage of development. Crete was the first among the Aegean islands to paint wares. The next great stride in its development was taken during the Second Early Minoan period. Numerous patterns of vases now made their appearance. Beaked jugs and curved lines, which soon developed into regular spirals, are in evidence. These gave rise in the next Early Minoan period to the spiral decoration and the field is suddenly flooded with an unprecedented variety of receptacles.

This is the period of the Second City of Troy also, later famous for its war with the Greek tribes of the Indo-European race. Incidents of the same stage of culture as of the Third Early Minoan age turn up in Troy of Asia Minor. There also articles of precious metals have been found in a considerable quantity. Gold pins and chains and gold and silver vases, unearthed there, have justified the name of “Priam’s Treasure” given to the Trojan hoards by archaeologists. In the field of pottery the Trojans, without doubt, retained their black style and the pattern of the “owl-headed” vases.

Likewise the islands between Troy and Crete have
afforded specimens of the same civilization and pottery and artistic pieces of the Cretan type. There too tombs of like type have been discovered. Idols in human form are as common in the Cretan graves as in the tombs of these islands resembling those of the predynastic Egyptian graves.

Characteristic of the last Early Minoan period is the marked progress in carving stone. Stone flowers and sea-urchins are the usual motifs. Steatite and white marble are the usual material from which these pieces are fashioned. Spiral decoration very generally appears on them. On gold of Troy and the stone pieces of the islands it seems to precede the like design on pottery. This had its origin in the Babylonian metal working which was copied by the Trojan goldsmiths. The same figured later on stone work and pottery. Egypt also adopted the same pattern in course of time.

The mastery in designing and finishing exquisite pieces of pottery was the result of two inventions of far-reaching importance in the history of art. These were the baking-furnace and the potter’s wheel. They were accomplished in the east, may be in Elam, perhaps in the Indus Valley, prior to 4000 B.C. They reached Crete and Troy about the Third Early Minoan period.

The ‘seal-stones’ belonging to the same period bear some remarkable signs related to a hieroglyphic system of writing. Thus a mode of writing was fast coming into existence. Its figures were impressed on clay tablets by means of a stylus in the Babylonian manner. It has been assumed that a considerable Egyptian influence was cast on the development of this script.

Architecture also was taking shape in this age. Most of the stone houses built prior to the Minoan palace at Knossos belonged to this period. It was from this stage that the excellent palatial buildings, halls and staircases were ultimately to develop and pronounce the last word on contemporary residential architecture.
The Kingdom of Knossos

The kingdom of Minos had its capital at Knossos on the northern coast of Crete. During the Middle Minoan period greater part of the island came to be ruled by Minos and soon the whole of Crete, the neighbouring islands and seas formed part of his kingdom. Phaistos and the palace of Agia Triada also are supposed to have been built by a Knossian king. Phaistos appears as a colony in legend.

The palace of Knossos was built on the remains of the Neolithic age. The site is close to the modern city of Candia, on the north coast of the island. The palace has been revealed by the excavations of Sir Arthur Evans and Dr. Mackenzie. Its grand western entrance and "Stepped Theatrical Area" at Phaistos translated into stone a fine and spacious architectural conception and epitomized the tremendous powers of their builders. A portion of hill was levelled before the palaces could be built which shows that the kings who built them had great resources at their command. The theatre was built about 2000 B.C. in ten tiers of stone seats which run to a length of eighty feet; that at Knossos raised to eighteen tiers is thirty-three feet long. Perhaps besides gladiatorial fights concerts of music and folk dances were held there. Paintings preserve groups of men and women watching folk dances. The Greek Terpander is supposed to have invented the seven-stringed lyre, but such a lyre is represented on a sarcophagus at Agia Triada about a thousand years before him. As in the north at Knossos so also in the south at Phaistos palaces rose almost simultaneously. Close to Phaistos, a little later, a palace was built of which the remains preserved are known as Agia Triada, from the little church which stands on the site. This site had been inhabited from very early days, perhaps from the Early Minoan period, Agia Triada, the palace itself originating from the Late Minoan period.

The Late Minoan period saw great alterations made
in the Knossian palace which had already been remodelled at the end of the Middle Minoan period. The recent excavations have brought to view its extraordinary complex of halls, staircases, and chambers descending a slope, with outlying buildings like the "Royal Villa" below it to the north and the "Western House" higher up the hill to the west—a phenomenal growth of Cretan civilization during the short few centuries. This palace is extremely modern in look and execution with its elaborate system of sanitary drainage. It is more modern than any Greek building of the classical period and before it the palaces of the Egyptian Pharaohs were but elaborate hovels of painted mud. It was surpassed only by the splendour of the painted palaces of Ashurbanipal at Nineveh, but while their coldness was weird and forbidding that at Knossos rang with teeming life. The frescoes on the walls of the palace at Knossos disclose a crowded court, a big band of retainers, both men and women, surrounding the king and enjoying themselves. The paintings are often stiff and crude, even conventional, but indeed very powerful in design. In the frescoes of the palace corridors women appear as often as men and take free part in the dalliances. Women's part in life seems to have been easy and great. They seem to have moved about on equal terms with men. They perhaps even controlled the life at the palace and in the society. No nation of the ancient world gave such freedom and equality to women as did the culture of Crete.

The frescoes represent women as white and men as red in colour after the Egyptian convention. The Minoan courtiers were clean-shaved and wore their hair as long and as elaborately dressed in curls as did the women. Many a time, specially in the bull-fights in which both take equal and free part, the boys are not distinguishable from the girls except from the colour, for both have the same flying hair, indeed the same length, the same supple form. Besides the bull-fights, which of course are numerous, ladies
of the Minoan court are depicted sitting at the windows of the palace quite unveiled. Their dresses defy the old times and they wear quite the modern breath. They wear a décolleté, with bare necks and arms, the breasts covered apparently with gold or silver guards making out their outline, waists pinched in, and, below, ample skirts with parallel rows of flounces, resembling nothing so much as the crinolines of the mid-nineteenth century. Women of earlier centuries wear skirts with high ruff-like collars and horned head-dresses which may or may not be their hair. The coiffeur of the ladies of the Late Minoan period have knots and side-curls of the eighteenth century England. They wear tiaras or fillets.

Men put on a very simple dress: a waist-cloth under, a short kilt above, together giving the impression of a bathing suit. But these dresses, unlike the Egyptian ones, bore bright colours ornamented with spiral and other designs. As in Egypt, the upper part of men’s bodies was generally left bare. They occasionally wore a conical cap. Men sometimes coiled up their hair on the crown, but ordinarily left them hanging loose down the back to the waist or below it, sometimes in plaits or curls. Like the Hittites of later times, the men of Knossos wore putteed sandals or high boots.

The Minoans seem to have been rather poor in defensive weapons. They wore no armour during fights but carried a shield. A leather helmet, reaching down to the end of the cheeks, however, was worn in wars and gladiatorial combats. A straight thin sword was their chief weapon of offence. It was often ornamented with designs in inlaid metals.

The Minoans were perhaps a brunette race, much like the modern Italians. Their skin was red, their hair was dark brown to black, their features were 'Caucasian'.

Inscriptions, unlike the Egyptian and the Assyrian, do not appear on the walls along the paintings, but figure al-
most exclusively on tablets of which great stores were found at Knossos and elsewhere. These tablets are supposed to be inventories and accounts of objects although they have not been read as yet. The seal-impressions give some idea about the chariot which was in use at this stage of about the 15th century B.C. On one of these there occurs the figure of a war-horse, rather a small variety, very possibly recently introduced from Egypt.

Life lived was rather gay and inaustere, untrammelled by religious rigours. The gods, however, were known, and a mother goddess bearing serpents seems to have been universally honoured. There were perhaps numerous minor deities of woods and streams and stones and of the ocean, huntress-goddesses, and sun-warriors, Dryads, Satyrs, and Fauns, Naiads and Nereids and Old Men of the Sea, who have been found depicted on many a Minoan seal-intaglio. The funerary rites were perhaps influenced by the Egyptian. The dead were usually placed in pottery coffins.

Besides the frescoes on walls and paintings on the vases which give us an idea of the free riotous life of their makers, the magazines and chambers of the palaces and towns have yielded enormous articles of art. We have already mentioned the rich colours which have preserved a lot of the teeming life we have spoken about. Now we may refer to a few other branches of artistic pursuit. Stone sculptures in the round or in high relief are few and far between, almost nil as compared to the countless numbers of the east and the south. Among the finest pieces of small sculpture in the world are the two steatite vases of the First Late Minoan period from Agia Triada, on one of which we see a procession of drunken roistering peasants bearing agricultural implements, and on the other the reception or dismissal of a warrior with his followers by a king or prince. The first is a masterpiece of relief, while the second is full of Greek reticence and sense of proportion.

The period that followed was one of positive decadence.
The highest culture of the Cretan palaces was already lived before the Greeks, the earliest among the classical waves, appeared. But Cretan stories come to be mixed up with the mythological tales and ancient legendary traditions of the Greeks. It will be fair to refer to some of them here. They are mostly related to Minos, the Cretan king who ruled about the middle of the thirteenth century B.C. and after whose name the culture of the island is called Minoan. King Minos's queen Pasiphaë is said to have borne many children among whom were two pretty daughters, Phaedra and Ariadne. Once, it is said, the sea-god Poseidon got angry with Minos and in revenge afflicted his queen Pasiphaë with a mad passion for a divine bull. The great architect Daedalus, banished from Greece and living in Crete, who had built the palace of Minos, connived with the queen and helped in her amours with the bull. The queen conceived and bore the fierce Minotaur whom the king locked up in the famous Labyrinth where he was appeased with human sacrifices. Seven handsome young men and seven pretty maids came to Crete from Athens as a nine-yearly tribute who were sent to Minotaur. The bull-born Minotaur first used them sexually and then devoured them.

Daedalus himself, having become jealous of his nephew's art, had murdered him and, banished in punishment for his gruesome act, had taken refuge at Minos's Court. Getting angry with the artist's connivance with his queen in her amour, the king imprisoned him with his son Icarus in the Labyrinth. Daedalus forged wings for himself and his son and they flew over the walls of the palace and the waters of the Mediterranean. Icarus in his arrogance flew too close to the sun and the heat melted the wax and he fell and was drowned in the sea. The father dulled by the death of his son flew to Sicily where he introduced the Cretan culture.

A third story, told by the ancient legends of Greece,
also is related to Crete and the theme of the Minotaur. Theseus, the king of the Athenians, got once himself selected among the youths to be sent to Crete for the sacrifice. Ariadne, the fair haired daughter of Minos, fell in love with the handsome prince, gave him a magic sword with which to slay the monster and a bundle of thread which she tied to his arm so that he might find his way back from the Labyrinth after unravelling it while going in. Theseus slew the monster and fled with Ariadne and his companions to the island of Naxos where he was to have wedded the Cretan princess. But as she lay asleep, the prince treacherously sailed away with his companions.

The Later Times

In course of time the Cretans overreached themselves. They built up almost an empire on the neighbouring islands, seas and their coastal lands. The nation slowly exhausted itself. The southern and central Greece, earlier the neighbourhood of Troy, were colonized. Numerous towns including Mycenae became the centres of the Minoan culture. Their pottery, their metal articles, their buildings and monuments were inspired and influenced by the Cretan models. For a time the greater part of Greece and numerous spots in Asia Minor had colonies of Minoan settlers. This meant work and exhaustion. Although it meant considerable revenue too in the shape of tributes from the colonies on the main land and from the islands to the mother country including human victims, an inhuman annuity, for the sacrifices to the bull-deity, the burden proved too heavy and the shoulders fell away. The spine broke down and what remained of the living mass was consumed by the fires set ablaze by the invaders.

Who were these invaders? From where did they come? When did they come?

It is difficult to answer any of these or similar questions. Who were these invaders? Much speculation has been
occasioned in answer to this query. Perhaps the original Greeks, perhaps the Achaians, perhaps the later advents like the Dorians, even perhaps the Hittites or other war-like inhabitants of Anatolia. We are not quite sure which of the Indo-European Aryans were the cause of the destruction of the Cretan palaces and of the Minoan culture, not even about the time when they entered Greece. It has been suggested that even if they came they settled down very early almost with the Minoan settlers from whom they learnt and whom they destroyed. It has been doubted if the Achaians were pure Aryans and not a mixed race representing both Mycenaeans and Aryans or even Hittites. Pelops, the founder of the house of Agamemnon itself, it has been speculated, might have been a Hittite. It is possible that the Homeric Greeks who applauded their forefathers as Achaians might have made the Mycenaeans themselves that honoured breed and rejoiced at being their offspring. Whoever it was, the race that bore the Cretans down was singularly fitted for the task of destruction and left no bricks sticking together.

If they did not rise from the land they destroyed, they perhaps came from north of Thessaly, from Thessaly itself, which, however, was not their original habitat. Perhaps they came from the mid-reaches of the Danube, or from beyond them, from southern Russia or from the coasts of the Black Sea. Any of these could be their original home. They came down, wave after wave, deluged the great cities of Greece, breathed the free air of their rural settlements round the Cretan colonies and Grecian towns which they besieged and invested. Then they crossed the seas, swooped down the rich islands, and finally reached the luxury-loving coast of the great island of Crete, the cradle of the Minoan civilization that had forestalled our age by millennia in look and amenities. Life there had not known the green of decay; it had held the red vitals in its palm
which it was now compelled to stretch forth. Luxuries of centuries were stored in the palaces of Knossos and of Phaistos, and they all were consigned to flames and to scorched debris, and they lay there until Sir Arthur Evans dug them up.

The Invasions and the End

A series of invasions followed. Perhaps the first to come were the Achaians. Next came the Boeotians who themselves, were followed by the Thessalians. The Thessalian or Thespriotian invasion, which probably occurred about the thirteenth century B.C., was a tremendous one and engendered far-reaching effects. This brought for the first time great numbers of iron-using Aryans into Greece. The Achaians of Thessaly, who had already infiltrated southward and formed the mixed population of Ionia, were rooted out and scattered. A portion of them conquered the south and the rest crossed the sea to the Phrygian coast. The Trojan war may have been an incident of this racial movement, thus occasioning the possibility of the Achaians having been the conquerors of Troy rather than the Peloponnesians. Likewise the Boeotian and Achaian invasions of the south uprooted the Minyae, Pelasgians, and Ionians. While Minyae pressed on to Lemnos, the Pelasgi and Ionians concentrated in Attica, and the southern Achaians moved into the Peloponnese, a mixed body of Peloponnesians (Arcadians and Laconians), Kythnians and other Ionians took ship across the sea and appeared in Cyprus and gave their dialect to the island. With this same succession of invasions and the resulting migrations must be associated the great wanderings of the Philistines and their allies, perhaps from Crete, themselves driven out probably by Achaians. This horde overran Palestine and were stopped on the borders of Egypt by Rameses III. They were later absorbed in the Semitic population after a short spell of independent colonization
of Canaan and the eastern mainland of the Mediterranean. The traditional date of the Trojan War according to the Parian Chronicle is 1194-1184 B.C. and it accords admirably with the known date of the war of Rameses III with the Philistines, about 1196 B.C. In the 6th century B.C. Hecataeus, the geographer-historian, calculated the date of the siege as 1194 B.C. These restless movements and migratory wars of the tribes all along the south-eastern Europe and south-western Asia are reflected in the Egyptian records. "The isles were restless:" they say, "disturbed, among themselves." Pliny clearly says that the siege of Troy took place during the reign of Rameses III.

The siege of Troy, the unearthing of the great city and the life of its excavator all the three present to us incidents of a panorama of romance. No scholar ever believed in the historicity of the story of Homer as he relates it in his Iliad. The story of the great epic is simple. Paris, the son of Priam, king of Ilium (Troy) seeks hospitality at Sparta when its king Menelaus is away. His ravishing queen Helen, surpassing by her charms all the beauties of the Greek world, attends on the handsome and romantic prince, and while treating him with all the lavish hospitality of the royal household she offers herself as the crowning reward of the tricky young man's flattering courts and courtesies. Opportunities of romantic retreats multiply and love grows beyond leaps beyond bounds. Then the loving couple leave Sparta and elope to Troy. When Menelaus returns and discovers his loss his clarions call to the ends of the Greek world and tribes muster at Sparta and at Mycenae and the latter's king and Menelaus's brother Agamemnon leads the hosts to Troy with Ajax, Odysseus, Achilles and others in a thousand ships which the fair face of Helen sets on the waters to hoist sail. As a result the city of Troy is besieged, the siege continues for ten years, heroes take and give life, quarters are neither sought nor
given and in the end the fortress is razed to the ground and Helen is recovered. People have doubted the truth of the story. Stesichorus refused to believe the story and Herodotus thought that the Trojans were no fools to fight for ten years and to their annihilation for a mere woman. The great dramatist Euripides asserts that Helen did not elope but was abducted to Egypt where she waited for a dozen years for her husband to find her. This is strange logic which contemplates women bidding husbands' successful quest of them while they dalliance with their lovers. Against this all the historians of Greece, all her poets, all her records in temples and legends attest to the veracity of the great event and now the diggings at Hissarlik have laid the layer of the city bare. We have therefore to accept the truth of the contents of Homer's Iliad, of which the essence must be true although the details may be doubtful. Both the ancient Persians and Phoenicians believed that Troy was sacked for the recovery of a woman.

The Iliad is composed in twenty-four Books and describes in a colourful poetic language the siege of Troy and the battles. It relates the events only of the last year of a ten years' war. The city had been under siege for nine years when the epic opens. The troops are homesick and tired. When they started from their coasts the wind had been opposite and their leader Agamemnon had to sacrifice his little daughter Iphigenia to the god of the breezes and the ships had free access to the seas. The heroes appropriate the spoils formed by pretty women on the way and when Agamemnon wrests Achilles' pretty beauty Briseis, the latter denounces the former and refuses to fight for the Greeks. Thus ends the First Book. The Second describes the ships and the assembled hosts. The Third combines war with peace. The heroes of both sides mingle and adore the gods together. Menelaus and Paris are locked in single combat and when the former gets the better of the latter
Aphrodite, the divine lady of romances, favours her darling and lifts Paris in a haze of cloud and carries him adorned and anointed to the safe bed of Helen where the lovers soon drown the rigours and worries of war into the pleasant dalliances of love. In the Fourth Book Menelaus is declared victor over Paris and the war seems to have come to an end when the gods, athirst of blood, renew it.

The Fifth takes note of the battle among the gods. The Sixth Book opening with an affectionate domestic scene, which presents a dialogue between Hector and his wife ends with the hero walking away to the battle-field worried about the fate of his wife and his infant son. In the Seventh Book is portrayed the combat between Hector and Ajax which ends in a draw. The Eighth preserves the hero's address to his troops bidding them to rest. In the Ninth Book king Nestor attempts unsuccessfully a reconciliation between Agamemnon and Achilles. The Tenth Book registers a massacre of some Trojan chieftains at night by Odysseus. A great battle is fought in the Eleventh Book by Agamemnon, Odysseus, Menelaus and Ajax in which Agamemnon is wounded and has to retire. In course of the Twelfth and Thirteenth Books the Trojans make a bid for the camps of the Greeks but in the following Book the divines intervene and help the Greeks drive the Trojans back. The Book Fifteen presents a scene in which the Greeks fall back and fight a desperate battle. Homer touches poetic heights as the defenders risk life for every inch of ground they lose. Everybody feels the need of Achilles but he is adamant and does not stir. Then his beloved friend Patroclus, the most handsome among the Greek youths, dons Achilles's armour and with his permission leads his troops and is engaged and killed by Hector. With this death closes the Book Sixteen which is followed by another book of desperate fighting. Book Eighteen is both touching and preparatory to a hero's entry into the lists, while the next reconciles Achilles
to Agamemnon and the former donning divine arms and shield walks fierce against Aeneas but the latter who later becomes the hero of Virgil’s epic, is saved by the intervention of the sea-god. Book Twenty-one sees the feat of Achilles’s slaughter of the Trojans and getting inspired by his vigour the gods begin to fight among them. They become humanly fierce and there is no distinction between the gods and goddesses made as the battle roars and the immortals close in deadly combats. Twenty-second Book almost brings about the finale when Achilles having massacred the Trojans opposing his might and put the rest to flight challenges Hector to single combat. Hecuba and Priam counsel Hector to retire who refuses to do so but when Achilles advances upon him he is seized with such fear that he flees the field. But Achilles refusing to forgive the slayer of his friend pursues him and after making three rounds of the fastness of Troy overtakes his mortal foe and despatches him forthwith. In the Twenty-third Book they cremate Patroclus with sacrifices and in the last Book Achilles thrice drags the corpse of Hector tying it to his chariot round the burning pyre to appease the spirit of his departed friend. Then before the great epic closes there is enacted a scene both tragic and noble when Priam goes to demand of Achilles the mutilated corpse of his son. Achilles refuses and Priam reminds of his father asking him how he would feel if he were refused his son’s corpse. Achilles, overcome by noble sentiment, makes over Hector’s body to Priam. The Trojan Horse, famous across history, was a contrivance of the Greeks which concealed soldiers who entered the gate with the wooden horse and overcame the guards. The Indian play the Clay-Cart (Mrichchhakatika), following this device, makes use of a wooden elephant instead of horse to capture king Udayana of Vatsa.

The father of archaeology Heinrich Schliemann was born in 1822 in a lower middle class family in Germany. His
father was very fond of Homer and used to relate stories from the Iliad and Odyssey and the little boy would ask in wonderment if the stories were true. His father would explain that much of it was a poet’s creation but, any way, Troy was destroyed after a siege. The boy’s imagination worked up love in him for the great city and he promised to rediscover it. At the age of ten he wrote an essay in Latin on the Trojan War and at that of fourteen he became an assistant in a grocer’s shop. He was thinking all these years about Troy and all his efforts were addressed to the task of preparing and earning money for excavating the ruins of the city. He saw that little earnings would not help matters and he must amass millions for the work. Determined to make his millions he embarked on a ship bound for South America. The ship foundered but the boy still in his teens swam the sea to the shores of Holland. Applying himself to banking interests of merchants he roamed the continent of Europe and learnt all the languages of Europe besides Greek and Arabic. He had not completed his twenty-fifth year when he came to have monetary interest in all the three continents of Europe, Asia and America and began to run a chain of shops through which he made the millions he needed to crown his resolve with success. Only thirty-six years old and minting money he gave up business and reached Turkey. He was so full of Homer that he married a Greek girl twenty-eight years his junior, called her Helen and his children Andromache and Agamemnon and gave Greek and Homeric names to his servants and sang Iliad. He bought a piece of land on the hill of Hisarlik from the Sultan and put his spade to the earth and lo and behold there lay under his eyes the ‘Treasure of Priam,’ chose a pair of pendants from the hoard, ran to his wife, put them on her ears and called her ‘my Helen!’ Luck favoured him in digging, as it had done him while he was making money and he laid bare not one, not two, but nine
cities of Troy buried one on the top of the other. Under this Troy of Homer there lay six cities representing civilizations of times earlier than the blind poet.

A large copper vessel containing some nine thousand objects in silver and gold was discovered. Among the finds of the Sixth City of Troy were listed among others six bracelets, two goblets, two diadems, a fillet, sixty earnings, and 8,700 other pieces—all in gold. The scholars of Europe were sceptic and they even doubted the honesty of Schliemann, but when some of them visited Troy—a few like Dorpfeld even took part in the excavations—and objects of contemporary Troy and many a time shading or underlining the description of Homer kept turning up, they were convinced that the Ilios of the Iliad was found and that Schliemann was no impostor.

Later Schliemann moved to the mainland of Greece in search of Agamemnon’s grave and sank a good number of shafts at Mycenae. There he opened some ancient tombs which concealed golden masks, jewellery and skeletons which the digger mistook to have belonged to Agamemnon. He never knew that they represented a civilization earlier than that king of Argos by a couple of centuries. Eight years later, in 1884, Schliemann exhumed the cyclopean walls of the fastness and palace at Tiryns described so zealously by Homer and so eloquently mentioned by writers of later ages, said to have been built two hundred years before the Trojan War for Proetus, the king of Argos. The palace contained vaulted galleries and chambers, opening on a spacious and cemented courtyard bounded with colonnades. The palace was fitted with women’s quarters and chambers for men.

Mycenae, the greatest capital of prehistoric Greece, was built about the fourteenth century B.C. The cyclopean walls of the palace are pierced with the famous ‘Lion Gate.’ Homer calls this city as ‘well-built, broad avenued and abounding in gold’. Schliemann’s excavations proved
the statement of the blind poet for he dug up here male sculls with crowns of gold, faces with golden masks, female heads with dazzling diadems, "painted vases, bronze caldrons, a silver rhyton, beads of amber and amethyst, objects of alabaster, ivory or faience, heavily ornamented daggers and swords, a gaming board like that at Cnossus, and almost any thing in gold—seals and rings, pins and studs, cups and beads, bracelets and breastplates, vessels of toilette, even clothing embroidered with thin plates of gold. These were assuredly royal jewels, royal bones." Nineteen skeletons were unearthed there which without doubt had once belonged to royal personages. Mycenaean metal work is superb. A cow's head in exquisite silver, with horns and frontal roset'e of gold, is an admirable piece of art. One of the two cups of beaten gold, found near Sparta, in a tomb of Vaphio, presents in chased work on one side a bull caught in a rope-net, gaping with anger raised to a frenzied pitch and struggling to be free from his hold, another bull galloping in terror, and a third charging at a cowboy who bravely catches it by its horns. Since most of the objects were found in the tombs it may be concluded that the Mycenaeans, like the Cretans and the Trojans, and unlike the Greeks who were cremated, were buried and entombed, and that they believed in an after-life existence.

Usually the introduction of iron in Greece is ascribed to the Thesprotian invasion. The invaders came ultimately from the region of Danube where iron was in use. Their easy victory over the Achaians, who had originally lived in Thessaly and learnt the use of metal from the Aegeans, was incidental to the use of iron which became universal when the uprooted Achaians moved to the south and diffused their knowledge of the new metal there. The new metal reached even the north coast of Crete and we know from the discovery at Mouliana that for a time both bronze and
iron were used side by side, while the old Aegean culture was disappearing. The invasion threw the entire civiliza-
tion and the cities into confusion. The ancient Minoan
cities had no defences and were soon abandoned and their
population fled to fastnesses in the hills. Pirates infested the
seas and their coasts and life everywhere in that region be-
came insecure. It was about this time that the Phoenician
traders made their first appearance on the Greek seas, and
as the Homeric poems assert, trafficked with the Aegeans
and stole them to be sold as slaves in Sidon and Tyre.

The Homeric Poems

At this time numerous lays of the Achaianas and other
tribes were sung. They were a mass of floating literature
depicting life in the foregone centuries. A Chian poet, call-
ed Homeros (popularly Homer) welded in the ninth century
B.C. into a magnificent whole the lays and poems by
earlier poets which described the great event of the Achaian
colonization of Aeolis, viz. the siege of the Phrygian city
of Troy by Agamemnon, King of Argos, and the great
quarrel between him and his ally Achilles, King of the
Thessalian Myrmidones. The great epic was the famous
Iliad. Probably the invaders came from Argos in Thes-
saly and were the natural enemies of Troy rather than from
Argos in the Peloponnese although there was nothing to
impede the poe's from appropriating the glories of Mycenae
near Argos in the Peloponnese by making the chief of the
latter the leader of all the Greek forces arrayed against the
Trojans.

The world of the great epic is that of Greece of a few
centuries prior to the tenth. Anachronistic incidents are not
wanting in the Iliad but the general life depicted in the
poem belonged to the epoch between the 13th and 10th
centuries. Homer lived perhaps in the ninth century B.C.
but he concentrated on an older society and the earliest events
of his narration may very well visualize the conditions immediately following the migration. This is to say that the Homeric culture is the culture of the Achaians of the twelfth or eleventh century B.C. when bronze is the usual metal although iron is not unknown and is occasionally used. Both the Iliad and the older parts of the Odyssey show that the classical Greece had not dawned as yet although its foundations were being laid.

It was about this time, between the twelfth and eleventh centuries, that a great event took place which set the stage for the coming new life in Greece and of a sudden created the circumstances which brought about the birth of the new culture. It was the invasion of the Dorian Aryans. This brought to southern Greece an unmixed population of the Aryans. The Dorian came from Illyria whom the Thesproians had set into motion. With the Thesprotians hard on their heels they pressed forward and colonized Greece. The Peloponnese was conquered and Laconia became the main Dorian state. It enslaved the Achaian and the Aegean populations and ruled with a rod of iron from the village which the Dorian built by the older Achaian capital, Lacedaemon. By the tenth century B.C. the kingdoms of Sparta and Argive had been established. The Dorian were soon in Crete and among the neighbouring islands completing the task of destruction that had begun centuries before. The Ionians had already moved eastward and had colonized Ionia.

It was now from there, from the east, that light came. In the courts of Acolis and Ionia the remnants of the old Aegean culture had taken refuge and there the Homeric poets of Asia received the patronage for the lays they conserved and composed. There the weak yet great Aegean culture mingled with the cruder elements of the Aryan Greek civilization and proclaimed the dawn of the Greek renaissance. The new Greek civilization arose in Ionia.
Ionia gave Greece her coined money and letters, art and literature, receiving them partly from the east, transmitting the same to the west, and partly from the Aegean culture which was strong enough in that part to lend its yarn to the new fabric.

The Life of the Achaeans

The civilization of Crete, Mycenae and Troy including the Aegean islands was of one piece. Maybe the culture of Mycenae was influenced from time to time by the tribes living in the north but basically this too was an extension of the Minoan main. This ancient civilization or its political supremacy was destroyed by very ancient Greeks of the Indo-European family called the Achaeans about 1200 B.C. or slightly later. The last vestiges of this civilization were removed by another branch of the same Aryan family called the Dorian a couple of centuries later. The epoch which is filled up by the activities of the two, chiefly the Achaeans, is called the Heroic Age as the only source from where data about their life is derived is Homer's epic the Iliad. From this work and the ancient Greek legends we learn about these restless conquerors who conquered Greece, Crete and Troy during the centuries beginning with the fourteenth and ending with the twelfth. The Achaeans have been equated with the Ahhijavas in the Boghaz Koi records of the Hittites and are said to be as powerful as the latter people themselves whom they help in their campaigns. They spoke a Greek tongue and cremated their dead, they were familiar with iron though used weapons chiefly of bronze; their ways of living were very dissimilar to that of the Mycenaeans.

If Atarissyas, the king of the Ahhijavas, of Hittite records is the same as Atreas, king of the Achaeans, of the ancient Greek legends, then the following descent of kings based on them will touch the times contemporary with the Trojans. Tan'alus' son was Pelops, whose son was Atreus who begat Agamemnon. Pelops gave his name to the Pelo-
ponnesus and when his Atreus died his two sons Agamemnon and Menelaus, marrying respectively Clytaemnestra and Helen—daughters of King Tyndareus of Lacedaemon—ruled over Mycenae and Sparta. Agamemnon was the leader of the Greek hosts that destroyed Troy in revenge for Paris, the son of king Priam, carrying away of Helen, the queen of Menelaus, the Spartan king and brother of Agamemnon. The life of Achaean Greece (1300-1100 B.C.) has to be constructed from the epic of Homer which describes the Achaeans, that is the Greeks of the Heroic Age.

From that source it is evident that the Achaeans were less civilized than their enemies the Minoans or Mycenaeans and more civilized than the Dorians who followed them. They were tall and powerfully built and their women were fascinating. They wore long hair and beards and they cut off their hair as an offering to their dead. Men moved bare-legged and women bare-armed, but both put on sandals when out of doors. Both wore jewellery. They ate mostly meat, fish, grain and vegetables and drank wines. Men were given to outdoor vigorous exercises and war, women span and wove and embroidered and looked after other affairs of the home. Achaean society was rural and local. The families lived in huts and houses of mud with floors of beaten clay. Achaeans looked down upon trade and were unlettered. They had few arts to their credit. All that they knew in war of arts was the hammering of metals into plastic forms. They were poor in art but rich in action. Hospitality was lavish and maids looked after the guests. When they captured a town they massacred the men or enslaved them. Women, when attractive, were made concubines when plain, they were made to serve as slaves. Concubines could be generously shared with friends.

The society was patriarchal where the father's word was law but the woman's resentment was heeded and children were loved with tenderness although sometimes they could
be sacrificed. The status of woman was higher than it was in the classical Greek society. The brides were bought for oxen although they were dowered. They were led “beneath a blaze of torches from their chambers through the city, and loud rose the bridal song. The young men whirled in the dance and high among them did sound the flute and the lyre.” Women were faithful, men were not. The upper classes could indulge in a multiplicity of wives. The number of the wives of Theseus was so great that a historian drew up a catalogue of them.

The Achaean society was made of groups, genos, tracing common ancestry. The citadel of the chieftain was the centre of the city and eloquence swayed the decisions in the village assembly. The king was ordinarily hereditary but also a military commander who fought in the vanguard and often in single combats. He sacrificed for his people and was their high priest. He was the source of law and his decision was final. Violence abounded. The king’s revenues were the gifts he received from his subjects and his finances were replenished from the loot of the country of the enemy. Unprovoked aggressions were the norm. Might was right.

THE DORIANS

About a century after the Achaean invasion, that is around 1104 B.C., a war-like people called Doriens descended from the north over the settlements of the south, crushed both the Cretans and the Achaens and the Minoans and wiped out of existence most of all that had been left behind of the civilization of the Cretans, Mycenaeans and the Trojans. They wielded iron weapons and an iron will and had hardly passed out of the herding and the hunting stage. Their enemies, both Aryan and non-Aryan, were still using bronze weapons and bore poor resistance to them. Mycenae and Tiryns went up in flames, Knossos was destroyed, Melos,
Thera, Cos, Knidos and Rhodes were captured and colonized and the Dorian city of Corinth made its appearance. This was the famous Dorian conquest of Greece, the Aegean islands, Crete and its outposts in Asia Minor. It made the arts languish and ushered in an age which was dark and despairing.

But it gave one thing to the Greeks—a combined heritage. Blood freely flowed and mingled. The Achaeans, Dorians, Minoans and Asians intermarried and multiplied. A new humanity arose rich in heritage as in parentage and the interim created a background eminently suited for the emergence of the multifaced life of what is called the classical Greece—the famous world of the Sophists, Sceptics, and Stoics, of the philosophers, rhetoricians and playwrights, of artists and men of sciences, of intellectual women and academicians, indeed the glory that was Greece.
CHAPTER VI

INDUS VALLEY CIVILIZATION

Until very recently it was supposed that the history of India began with the advent of its earliest makers, the Aryans, sometime about the fifteenth century B.C. Only a few centuries earlier they had started migrating in various directions from their central knot in Southern Russia. It was natural therefore that scholars should look for the beginnings of Indian history in the light of the data furnished by their traditions and literary records, chiefly the Rigveda, which disclose a world of about the middle of the second millennium B.C. But in 1922 a gifted Indian archaeologist, R.D. Banerji, lighted upon certain objects, which when traced to their origin, disclosed the remains of a new civilization and pushed of a sudden the history of India by a couple of thousand years. Its character at once became of a piece with the culture of Sumer and linked it with the coeval civilizations of Babylonia, Egypt and Crete.

Ever since the close of the first World War peculiar antiquities had begun coming to light in the province of Sindh. These were seals with a perforated hump at the back and at face bearing life-like reliefs of animals topped with a seemingly pictographic writing hitherto unknown in India. No efforts, however, had been made to study and understand them until years after when Mr. Banerji's ex-
cavitations made their treatment urgent. He was excavating the base of a stupa at a place called Mohenjo-daro in the Larkana district of Sindh when traces of the vast remains of an ancient city lying buried under the solid structure became evident.

A few other sites too were explored bringing to our knowledge numerous mounds which, when opened, proved the existence of a riparian civilization, long dead, vegetating in the basin of the Indus. Remains were likewise discovered at numerous places in the Punjab, Sindh and Baluchistan. Ruins of towns, long buried under ground, where teeming life had once buzzed, started echoing with the sound of the spade and the noise of labour, and an Indus Valley civilization sprang up into the records of history. That the life in this civilization had been urban was known when the sites of Mohenjo-daro, the "Mound of the Dead", and Harappa in the Montgomery district of the Punjab were laid bare.

**Buildings**

It has already been mentioned above that the Indus Valley civilization was urban in character and that the remains unearthed were of towns. Two towns of considerable dimensions, Mohenjo-daro and Harappa, have yielded enormous material for study and for the invariable conclusion that they were exquisitely planned. The cities of the Indus Valley were the first planned towns of history. In fact real planning of towns is a recent incident in architecture and when we see the remains of Mohenjo-daro we are struck by the thoroughness with which the city was laid out. We are describing the conditions of the people and their living in that town alone which may serve for the type.

The main streets were fairly broad, somewhere between 9 ft. and 34 ft., and in certain cases running as long as half a mile. They cut each other at right angles and these divided the city in squares or rectangular blocks. The lanes
of the interior also intersected one another subdividing the blocks of houses into further subsections. The houses, mostly double-storied, stood on the streets and the lanes and opened in the streets. They were brick built, bricks being both sun-dried and baked in fire, those sun-baked used for the foundations and the terraces and the burnt ones utilized for the rest of the structure. Bricks were laid in mud or in both mud and gypsum mortar. Most of the houses had the usual living rooms, a bath-room a stairway leading to the upper storey, and a well. At Harappa workmen's quarters have also been found. They are generally of two rooms and a courtyard. The courtyard was the basic feature of the house planning, and was usually paved with bricks laid flat. It was surrounded with rooms and chambers opening into it. The most important feature of the city planning was its mode of conservancy. Every house contained a drain to carry off the dirty water. These individual drains, both vertical and horizontal, were connected with the street drains which collected into a main one finally flowing out into the river. Public wells were constructed between two houses in the street which, besides, contained its soakpits, manholes, dust-bins and rubbish chutes. Nowhere was a house permitted to encroach on the public street or lane. At Harappa a huge building, styled as the Great Granary, measures 169 feet by 135 feet. At Mohenjo-daro a pillared hall, 80 feet square, containing long corridors and benches, suggests the notion of a public assembly.

But the most important building of Mohenjo-daro is a vast hydropathic establishment, popularly called the Great Bath. The actual bathing space measured 39 feet long, 23 feet wide, and 8 feet deep. The surrounding building with verandahs on all sides covered an area of 180 feet by 108 feet. Flights of steps on both sides led to the surface of the water. The floor of the bath was paved with bricks laid in
INDUS VALLEY CIVILIZATION

gypsum mortar with an inch of damp proof bitumen. A round well filled the tank and a vaulted culvert, 6 feet 6 inches high, emptied it. A hammam or hot air bath was attached to the Great Bath which shows that the principle of hypocaustic arrangement was understood and utilized by the people of Mohenjo-daro.

It will be evident from the above that the habitats of the Indus Valley had reached a high water-mark of civilization and people were living under a remarkably advanced system of town planning and sanitation, where municipal laws were kept and lived. Their streets were broad and methods of conservancy perfect. Public baths were in use which must have engendered in the people the repose and activities of a corporate city life.

Social and Economic Aspects

The remains permit us to form a fair estimate of the people’s habits and dealings, both social and economic. The population, of which four ethnic units—Proto-Australoid, Mediterranean, Alpine and Mongolian—have been discovered, was evidently cosmopolitan, and the people acquired their wealth through rural occupations as well as commercial exploits.

It is evident that the climate of the place during those remote millenniums was mild and the soil yielded crops in numerous grains. The very existence of big cities proves the availability of food in ample quantity. In fact a riverain settlement presupposes cultivation of the land and raising of the crops. There was copious rainfall and the presence of a great river, besides the Mihran which dried up in the 14th century A.D., must have made the problem of irrigation easy of solution. Specimens of both wheat and barley have been found which shows that these grains were cultivated besides other cereals.

Food and Dress

The menu of the Indus people included both vegetarian
and animal diet. The cereals were perhaps the staple food although fruits and vegetables too were eaten. Stones of dates have been discovered which show that they were either grown or were picked from wild vegetation. The existence of the cattle almost settles the possibility of milk being included in the dietary. It can be gathered from the burnt shells and bones and the offerings to the dead that the people had among their items of food pork, beef, mutton, poultry, fish and the flesh of aquatic animals.

From the large finds of spindle-whorls it would appear that spinning was a universal habit and was freely practised. Those of the rich were made of faience while of the poor of shell and pottery. Cotton, which struck admiration among the Greeks beholding the cotton-clad mercenaries of Xerxes two thousand years later, was the lighter textile of the Indus people. A piece of cotton was found adhering to a silver vase which shows the present day coarser Indian variety of the khadi with its typical convoluted structure. Wool was the warmer textile and was naturally used during the cold season. The existence of herds of sheep warrants its ample provision.

The cosmopolitan character of the population necessitated a cosmopolitan variety of dress. A statue represents a male figure wearing a long shawl, drawn over the left shoulder and under the right so as to leave the right arm bare. A robe specimen suggests the chint wear. A number of images are nudes, which, however, must not be interpreted that people went about naked. The lower garment was usually the dhoti or a loin-cloth.

An endless variety of ornaments is in evidence which shows that people were fairly fond of them. The common ornaments for both men and women were necklaces, earrings, bracelets and anklets, and girdles of beads. They naturally had their rich and poor varieties. Gold, silver, ivory, faience, lapis-lazuli, jasper, carnelian, agate and like stones
provided material for the ornaments of the rich while copper, bone, shell and clay served the poor.

**Stones and Metals**

Stone was perhaps rare but not altogether difficult to procure. We find it used for door-sockets, saddle querns and mullers, statues and statuettes, and for cult objects. Metals known and utilized were gold, silver, copper, tin and lead. Bronze, an alloy of copper (nine parts) and tin (one part), was one of the earliest metals put to use by the Indus Valley people for it has been found among the lowermost layers of the civilization. The art of alloying presupposes the art of melting metals. Iron has not been found and, it being one of the late discoveries among metals, was not known.

**Weapons**

Stone weapons and implements were being used side by side with the metal ones although the latter were fast replacing the former. The weapons of war and chase were now usually made of copper and bronze. Among the weapons of war the most prominent were maces, axes, daggers, spears, bows and arrows, and slings. These were generally made of metal, i.e. copper and bronze. Maces made of alabaster, sand and limestone, have been found. The pear-shaped mace was very common. We are not sure if the defensive weapons like the helmet, shield or the armour were in use; but a kind of scale armour made of thin domed pieces of copper perforated with two minute holes has been found.

**Weights and Measures**

Weights of an infinite variety have come to light. They range from the heaviest, which had to be lifted with a rope, to the smallest used by jewellers. The most common are cubical in shape. It is believed that they are of a greater accuracy than those found in Elam and Mesopotamia,
A slip of shell has been taken by Dr. Mackay to be part of a linear measure. In Egypt the decimal linear measure had been in use since the 4th Dynasty, and in Sumer both the decimal and the sexagesimal systems were used. So also in Elam a purely decimal system was in vogue. We are not sure if the Indus Valley also used a decimal system in measurement although groups of five seeming to bear special marks would appear to point to that direction. The steel-yard was, however, not known; but both the foot and cubit systems seem to have been current.

**Household Articles**

An innumerable variety of articles used in the household is on record. They are made of various materials like clay, stone, shell, faience, ivory and metal. Copper and bronze are the usual favourites and seem to have mostly replaced stone as the material for household implements. Earthenwares are by far the most numerous. Cake-moulds, beakers, bowls, goblets, dishes, basins, pans, saucers, jars, vases are usually made of clay. Besides these there were needles, saws, sickles, knives, chisels, etc. These were made of bronze or copper and sometimes of ivory. Then there were in use numerous receptacles of toilet and cosmetics. The well known 'vanity case,' found at Harappa, contained besides other objects piercer, ear-scoop, and tweezers, and bears testimony to the use of such toilet articles as have been unearthed at Ur and Kish. The endless aids to beauty for example, collyrium, face-paint with their applying knobs had their cases made of metal, shell or ivory. Mirrors and combs and razors were known and were in use. Lamps of copper, shell and clay have been found.

**Games and Toys**

Marbles, balls and dice have turned up in a large number to suggest that they were the favourite games of the
people. Marbles were found in the Sumerian excavations also whereas the dice was the hot favourite of the laterly Aryans. Dice were both cubic and tabular in shape.

Toys of a large variety mostly fashioned out of clay have been formed. The clay-cart, which became later so popular as to suggest the title as well as theme for the famous play *Mrichchhakatika* by Sudraka, was the usual model. Rams yoked to wheels are as countless in number then as later in Sunga times. Besides, there were fashioned terracotta figurines of men, women, animals, and other toys and play-things like the rattle. Sometimes there turn up models of birds with stock legs, animals climbing up a pole, and figures with moveable arms. Clay bulls with a nodding head, worked by fibre thread, make for much fun.

**Animals**

A good number of animals, both tamed and wild, were known. Bones of several of these have been recovered. Bull, sheep, pig, buffalo, camel and elephant were known to the Indus Valley people who formed the population of the earlier epochs, for the bones of these have been found in corresponding layers. The carcasses of the horse and the dog have been recovered from the top levels. Besides these numerous other animals known to the people, but perhaps not domesticated, were those depicted on the seals, viz. rhinoceros, bison, crocodile, monkey, tiger, bear, deer, hare, and the like.

**Art**

Of a piece with the character of the rest of the contemporary world, the Indus Valley showed remarkable energy and ingenuity in carving and casting images and in turning out pieces of art. Statues of stone carved in the round and statuettes of steatite are rare specimens of the plastic art. They are such faithful illusions of their living originals that they defy all attempts at finding close parallels in coeval civilizations. The dancing stone figure from Harappa is
an ingeniously carved model that typifies rhythm in an arrested spin. The bronze image of the wiry girl from Mohenjo-daro is a rare specimen of wrought metal and has no parallel in the ancient world. Its natural poise, standing akimbo in frank abandon, breathes of a harmony that has been seldom achieved in metallurgic art.

But by far the most impressive is the hoard of the seals and sealings which spell the pride of the ceramical arts. Embossed tenderly and cast out of wonder-moulds these seals reveal to the eye the noblest that could be achieved in the art of moulding figures. Animal figures in massive or delicate humour have been delineated with unfailing skill and severe faithfulness. The bull, the crocodile, the tiger of the seals can be compared only with their live originals for man's hand has not shaped, whether in the past or present, anything that would stand comparison with these pieces. The bull particularly is a model of pent up force and cannot be matched to anything similar either in the ancient or the modern world.

The images and seals furnish us also with a few cult objects. Numerous terracottas of the mother goddess, who was an object of adoration all across the ancient world, were the precious yield of the excavations but indeed none more precious than the bust of the yogi in the attitude of meditation with his eyes fixed on the tip of his nose, and the seal of the horned god, Pasupati, the lord of the animal world, surrounded by his flock.

**Art of Writing**

The Valley of the Indus has been particularly deficient in yielding epigraphical records. When we compare it with the enormous crop of cuneiform tablets of ancient Babylonia, preserving long epics and great narratives, or of the Hittite diplomatic correspondence, of the panegyrical Assyrian records or the reports of the eponymous magis-
tracics, or of the extensive inscriptions in the Ramesseum or on the exteriors of the Egyptian temples or again with the hieroglyphics of the pyramids or the sarcophagi, indeed our disappointment knows no bounds. The Indus field looks singularly barren. Yet we know that the art of writing was known to the Indus people. The seals are topped with a line or lines of writing which is suggested to have been written from right to left, or at places in the boustrophedon style, i.e. written from right to left and then from left to right. Unfortunately the Indus script, like the Minoan, remains undeciphered as yet, although numerous attempts at its decipherment have been made. It is, however, supposed to belong to the proto-Elamite and hieroglyphic order, and its characters (some four hundred signs have been classified) have a pictographic look. When finally deciphered, the script is bound to throw a flood of light on the life and beliefs of the people of the Indus Valley. It has been sought to be related to the Brahmi and enthusiasts have not been wanting who have essayed to connect it to the proto-Brahmi script. But their ingenuity has failed to achieve anything and the remotest possibility of that kind has for the moment been discredited.

Religion and the Disposal of the Dead

The extensive remains of the civilization have thus far failed to yield positive proofs in the form of temples or priestcraft. But, as already pointed out, there is no dearth of iconic objects which may stand for cult articles. Numerous terracottas that have come to light betoken of the Nature Mother or the Mother Goddess whose worship was in vogue in all the lands between Persia and the Aegean coasts. In India it was from her worship that the laterly Sakta cult developed. Besides these icons, numerous representations of the phallic emblems—the linga and the yoni—have been unearthed, which prove the evolution of the
mother cult during those and the succeeding centuries. The three-faced horned figure of a male sitting in the Yogi attitude of meditation and surrounded by numerous animals on the face of a seal is suggested to be the proto-type of Siva in his Pasupati form. This undoubtedly would prove the hoary antiquity of the Saiva religion and of the remarkable continuity of the Indian culture.

Apart from these suggestions about the prevalence of iconic Mother and Saiva worship we have ample evidence of the people practising zooolatry and tree-worship. Tree-worship has come down to our days in some form or other but animal worship has mostly died out except in cases like the adoration of the Nandi, Siva's bull, the monkey-god Hanuman and serpent gods and goddesses.

Three methods of the disposal of the dead seem to have been in practice, namely, outright burial, burial after exposing the body to birds and beasts, and burial after cremation. No traces of a cemetery have been found at Mohenjo-daro although one on level ground has come to light at Harappa. Funerary urns with offerings have been discovered but never human victims of sacrifice to keep company with the dead in the manner of the tombs at Ur. Nor either did the Indus people hoard gold and precious stones and objects of use in the present world in the manner of the Egyptian dynasts or that of the common rich to the negation of the same for the living poor. The historian records this with ample relief.

**Date and the Authors of the Indus Valley Culture**

When did this great civilization flourish? Who were the authors of this riparian culture? How long did it last? How did it meet its end? These are some of the questions which naturally face the expert and lay reader alike. But these are not easy to answer. And yet an attempt will be made in the following paragraphs to answer them as best as can be done under the present state of our knowledge.
Childe thinks that "Judging by the domestic architecture, the seal-cutting, and the grace of the pottery, the Indus civilization was ahead of the Babylonian at the beginning of the third millennium (c. 3000 B.C.). But that was a late phase of Indian culture; it may have enjoyed no less lead in earlier times. Were then the innovations and discoveries that characterize proto-Sumerian civilization not native developments on Babylonian soil, but the results of Indian inspiration? If so, had the Sumerians themselves come from the Indus, or at least from regions in its immediate sphere of influence?"

Usually following the conclusion of Sir John Marshall a date between 3250 B.C. and 2750 B.C. is given. But although the two dates fall within the range of truth, certainly they cannot be accepted as conclusive. Neither the former date can claim to be the starting point of the Indus Valley civilization nor the latter one can be supposed to terminate it. They do, however, particularly the former, indicate its epochs without marking the outer limits of the age. How have these dates themselves been realized? The excavations at Mohenjo-daro have been classified among five strata or layers of civilization, namely, three of the Later period, three of the Intermediate and one of the Early period. The earliest is not quite the earliest because the subsoil is merged under water and can never be excavated. It has been suggested that since habitats under flood conditions are as quickly rehabilitated as they are deserted, a century alone for a single layer, in all five centuries, can be given for the duration of a single epoch. Now, from the priority of this civilization to the Aryan, and from a comparison with the excavated civilizations of Elam and Sumer where, in the latter place (Tell Asmar), seals of the Indus origin have been recovered, the culture of their origin, i.e. the Indus Valley civilization, has to be dated to earlier than 1900 B.C. and 2600 B.C., these dates indicating the
layers of their finds at Kish, Eshnunna and Ur. If tentatively the date has to be put somewhere about 2700 B.C. (with the help of independent local element), giving a hundred years to each stratum, in all five hundred years, according to Sir John's computation, 3250 B.C. is reached. This, however, even under his reckoning does not warrant the beginning, which, nevertheless, cannot be far removed from the beginning, of the civilization. The beginnings must concede a few centuries more for its growth and evolution, in case its authors did not come from outside and were autochthons who developed their living from the Neolithic and Palaeolithic origin.

Firstly, five hundred years alone could not be enough to cover the marches of such a great civilization howsoever homogeneous and unvarying its incidents might have been. So there is no need to suppose that it ended only five hundred years after its beginning, wherever it may be placed. Secondly, the seal-finds in Babylonia indicate the two ranges of say, 2700 B.C. and 1900 B.C. This would easily and without effort stretch the narrow five centuries to at least eight centuries which would mean that on other sites, if not on the banks of the Indus, the civilization kept on vegetating till later, possibly much later than 1900 B.C., may be till the 15th century B.C. if, or even if not, it was destroyed by the Aryans, if it was at all destroyed by them, as certain incidents of its violent termination suggest. Roughly the civilization may be supposed to have originated sometime in the fourth millennium B.C. and to have been destroyed in the second millennium B.C.

It is difficult to say as to how this riparian civilization met its end. Change of the course of the river, great flood, earthquake, invasion, any of these could be the cause of its end. In one of the rooms of a building at Mohenjo-daro mutilated bodies have been found and on the strength of this it has been conjectured that they fell a prey to violent
attack. They perhaps first fought and resisted, then took shelter and finally were annihilated in the cellar where they had taken shelter. The invaders may have been the conquering Aryans who in the beginning of the 2nd millennium B.C. made themselves the scare of the settled civilizations in the Near and the Middle East. If Mohenjo-daro was deserted due to inundation or was destroyed by earthquake, other sites at Harappa in the southern Punjab, Jhukhardaro and Canhu-daro in Upper Sindh, and at Nal in the Kelat State (Baluchistan) might have continued to flourish until finally devastated by the Aryans.

That the Aryans were for certain not the makers of the Indus Valley civilization is settled by the incidents of great contrast between the culture of the Rigvedic Aryans and that of the Indus people. The whole structure of the Rigvedic life was rural and the Aryans lived in villages of thatched huts of mud, whereas the Indus people were urban and lived in populous cities in brick-built commodious houses under a system of perfect conservancy. Theirs was a complex urban living aided by vast hydropathic establishments and a hypocaustic system of heating. It was perhaps to these Indus towns built of bricks that the Aryan priests referred when they prayed to Indra to destroy the enemy’s forts of metal. The people of the Indus had almost no weapons of defence while the Rigvedic people had several. In the Indus Valley it was the bull who was the object of adoration while with the Aryans it was the cow. The horse and the dog were the constant companions of the Aryan warrior while in the Indus Valley civilization they are almost totally missing. Only the uppermost layers have disclosed remains of the horse and the dog. The Indus Valley worship was iconic and phallic worship was one of its main features whereas the Aryan religion was aniconic and among the Aryans Sisnadevah, phallic-worshippers, was a term of reproach. These divergent characters of the two civiliza-
tions completely exclude the possibility of the one having developed from the other or of the Aryans having been the authors of the Indus Valley civilization.

Likewise the priority of the Rigvedic culture to the Indus Valley civilization is also precluded. The unbroken continuity of the Indian civilization from the Rigvedic times makes it impossible for a heterogenous culture like the Indus Valley's to have formed a link in the lineal chain. Besides, the Indus Valley civilization was coeval with the Middle East cultures and of a piece with them whereas the Aryan was a late comer.

But the Rigvedic Aryans seem to have known the people of the Indus Valley although as enemies. It is perhaps to them that they referred in their hymns as Dasas and Dasyus and dubbed with such opprobrious epithets as krismah, black-skinned, anasah, pug-nosed, adevayu, godless, ayajvan, devoid of rites, mridhravachah, jargontalkers.

Childe and Hall think that the makers of the Indus Valley civilization were also the makers of the Sumerian civilization. Leonard Woolley thinks that the makers of both the civilizations of Sumeria and the Indus Valley represent a common parent stock and culture and may have come from or near Baluchistan. It is significant that a chain of the same type of culture settlement as disclosed by Harappa and Mohenjo-daro has been disclosed in and on both sides of Baluchistan. Thus along the coast of Makran a cultural route seems to have run which had Baluchistan and Indus Valley on one end and Elam on the other. And from Elam, Sumer and Babylon lay within a stone's throw. Macdonell thinks that the Indus Valley civilization was derived from Sumeria. But the immediate forerunners of the Aryans seem to have been the Dravidians who may have been the real architects of this civilization. This point needs a little elaboration.
The only people who now can be credited with having created this wonderful civilization were the Dravidians, who were either autochthons or in their own turn immigrants from outside. If they came from outside the possible habitat may have been Elam or Sumer where amidst the Semitic peoples a non-Semite race had lived and developed a culture which it bequeathed to the neighbouring Semites who exterminated it. Or if the Dravidians were original inhabitants of Sindh and the adjoining districts and part of them migrated to Elam and ancient Sumer, they would have found the distance not very trying for a whole belt of their habitat across Baluchistan lay along the way. The Brahui speaking population might prove a migration either way or the remnant of another basic site of that civilization like Nal in the State of Kelat in Baluchistan. The fact of priority in the date of the two settlements of Sumer and Indus Valley will also enter in the answer to the question. Although at one stage it was Mohenjo-daro and Harappa which influenced the Sumerian culture, it will not be possible to settle the problem of priority. Even if it were settled, it can always be possible to hold in the absence of conclusive evidence that the two civilizations were totally independent although there was a free commerce of ideas between the two. Whatever the truth be, the chances of the Dravidians building that glorious civilization are the most likely.

But Indian civilization does not begin with the Indus Valley culture. Numerous cultures, Neolithic and Palaeolithic included, had preceded the Indus Valley finds which has been proved by the diggings at a number of places in Mysore, Gujarat, Madhya Pradesh, Uttar Pradesh and Rajasthan. Most recently the excavations conducted by the Vikram University of Ujjain at Bhim Bhetka, some twenty-six miles away from Bhopal (near Obaidullagunj), have brought to light Palaeolithic tools of the Aschulean man.
The tools are being dated to about a hundred thousand years before Christ and they may have been used by men who were not quite men yet. What is more important is that a whole sequence of ages reaching up to the second century B.C. has been brought to light. If this dating turns out to be correct the seat of one of the earliest civilizations of the human kind may have to be fixed at Bhim Bethka where some six hundred caves and shelters, painted and bare, have been explored by the excavators.

The Indo-Aryans

The Indo-Aryans, the first cousins to the Iranians of Airyana-Vaejo, perhaps second cousins to the Hittites and the Mitannis and distant cousins to the Indo-Europeans of Europe, invaded India about the same time as the Kassites invaded Babylonia. It seems that about 2000 B.C. the Aryan tribes made a rush against the settled civilizations of the river valleys. The Iranian Aryans had already broken away from their home along the Caspian coast or earlier still from a common habitat in south Russia. The Hittites and the Mitannis had just moved down the Caucasian slopes and were making history in Asia Minor and the Kassites had broken the remnants of the Babylonian empire of Hammurabi about the 19th Century B.C. It was about then (around the 18th to the 15th) that the Indo-Aryans broke away from their Iranian cousins and entered India, there to find that a great civilization was vegetating in the Indus Valley. They gutted that civilization by sword and fire and getting possession of the Punjab, settled down and built their villages there. Since their most sacred book is called the Rigveda it will be better to call them Rigvedic Aryans.

The Rigvedic Aryans were herders of cattle and tillers of soil. They had begun to live by war and spoliation but when they formed their settlements they became ardent agriculturists. They grew and ate barley, also perhaps wheat but no
rice. There were no landlords no paupers, but priests and vocational professions were there. They were divided in tribes, the outstanding numbering five, who lived under the leadership of a Raja. Their women enjoyed freedom and could own property to an extent the women of no nation except the Egyptian enjoyed in the ancient world. The Rigveda discloses a society wherein monogamy was the rule but polygamy flourished in no mean degree. There are contexts which, interpreted, clearly indicate incidents of adultery, incest, prostitution and exposure of illegitimate children. The most important feature of the social organization was its caste system which had already made its appearance although the castes—Brahmanas, Kshatriyas, Vaisyas, and Sudras—were not very clearly defined and intermarriages were very usual. There was a constant tussle for power between the lordly Kshatriyas and the priestly Brahmanas. Even great wars, for example the Dasarajna (war of the Ten Kings), were fought between them for power. Niyoga, the begetting of sons by Brahman priests on Kshatriya women, was very common, so much so that the important heroes of the great epics, the Ramayana and the Mahabharata, were begotten by Brahmans.

The pantheon of the Rigveda is extensive. The religion of the Aryan people was anthropomorphic. They believed in and worshiped the powers of nature. Dyava, the sky, and Prithivi, the earth, were the progenitors of all, even of the gods. But the greatest among the gods was Indra, god of thunder and lightning, whom the Aryans beg to destroy their enemies with his thunderbolt. Parjanya was the rain-god, Agni, the fire-god, Vayu the wind-god, Surya and Mitra the sun-gods, Soma the moon-god, Varuna the god of the waters and the universal order; Usha was the goddess of dawn and Aditi mother of all the important gods. Some very impassioned hymns have been addressed to Usha. The greatest number of hymns have been addressed to Indra and Agni,
the priest of the gods. The gods were very human and ate what Aryans ate and dressed as they did. The Aryans sacrificed first human beings, then animals and ate what was offered to their gods.

The Rigveda was their sacred composition, supposed knowledge to have been revealed to the sages, the seers, of the mantras. Veda, formed from vid, to know, was the Book of Knowledge, the most important of all the four being the Rigveda, the earliest. This is a collection of hymns or praises addressed to the gods. There are quite a few stories and dramatic contexts too in that work. It is divided in ten books called mandalas which together contain 1028 hymns. The other three Vedas are the Sama, the Yajur and the Atharva. The Samaveda is an anthology of hymns meant to be sung at the sacrifices. The Yajurveda contains sacrificial formulas and the Atharvaveda is a great collection of all kinds of hymns dealing, besides other subjects, with magic and healing of illnesses.

The language of the Indo or Rigvedic Aryans as evidenced by the Rigveda was a form of ancient Sanskrit, very akin to the language of the Iranians of the Avesta, but already advanced in structure, metre and all those nuances which make a language perfect. It also arose from the same maternal base which gave rise to other Indo-European languages.
CHAPTER VII

CHINA

Beginnings

We know the effect of the inventions of paper, press, and gun-powder over the history of mankind. The history of the people to whose credit these inventions go must be very fascinating and it is the same that we are going to narrate in the following pages in as succinct a manner as possible.

Within the scope of our survey the history of the Chinese people has not only to be very brief but, indeed, has to close where that of the most people begins. This is because the history of that ancient land is so coherent and consecutive that unless we cut its narration drastically its entire run will have to be related. It has, for example no termination in the manner of Egypt, Crete, Sumer, Babylonia, or Elam; it does not even warrant a hiatus in the manner of Indian history after the Indus Valley epoch which affords both space and time for the historian to breathe before he can plunge again into the current of history which follows the advent of the Indo-Aryans and runs coherently until the Muslim invasion.

It is obvious therefore that the range of this treatment has to be limited arbitrarily and its bounds, at least on the outer side, have to be consequently unnaturally fixed. The following survey therefore essays to marshal into array the
events of Chinese history from the earliest times, as far as they can be ascertained, to the fall of the famous Chou Dynasty in 249 B.C.

The People

The Chinese civilization also, like other ancient civilizations of the world, was riparian and arose and developed in the basin of the great Hwang-ho, the life-giving Yellow River. The name of the Yellow River in China has been mentioned for millenniums with considerable fear as it is associated with the havoc of devastating floods, which have dislodged millions from their original homes and compelled them to move north and south in search of food in course of the eventual famine. All the same, it has been the birth-place and cradle of a great civilization the coherence and continuity of which has been peculiar to the land of China. That continuity has not terminated even to-day, at a distance of some five thousand years since its traditional history is supposed to have begun.

True, that the north and the north-west of China have always had restive nomads and that the world has received its destructive pests and perils from that direction, once inhabited by the Yueh-chi, Hiungnu, and the Mongols, the Chinese of the Hwang-ho basin have normally been a settled people. In the absence of a fixed settlement it could not have been possible for them to have built up the great culture of their land. There is no doubt about the fact that like all other peoples of the world the Chinese also have had to suffer a free mixing of alien blood incidental to constant movements of ethnic units, yet they have always retained the basic Mongoloid features and yellow colour. This fact amply discredits the numerous suggestions of their having been originally a brunette people. Various original homes have been suggested for the main Chinese stock, namely India, Sumer, Egypt, Persia. The records and traditions of the Chinese people also are completely silent and do not give any indica-
tion of their immigration into China from outside. In fact the anthropological data appear to contradict the idea of any connexion with Indians, Babylonians, Egyptians or Assyrians. The earliest Chinese hieroglyphics ascribed traditionally to the Shang dynasty (second millennium B.C.) confirm the Mongol character of the nation that invented them by the decided obliquity of the human eye wherever it appears in an ideograph. Without accepting the possibility of a purity of blood, it can be said that the central stock of the Chinese people that created the civilization of the Hwang-ho was autochthon.

The study of man makes China one of the countries where man was linked with his ancestor the ape. The ‘Peking Man’ marks China out as the abode of the human ape and as one of the possible places where man emerged in the form called ‘homo sapiens’. “The present ‘Mongolian type’ is a highly complex mixture in which the primitive stock has been crossed and recrossed by a hundred invading or immigrating stocks from Mongolia, southern Russia (the Scythians?), and Central Asia.” Modern researches show that in Honan and south Manchuria a neolithic culture had preceded the historical one in China which shows that the Chinese culture has a continuity of about seven thousand years.

History

Like the traditions of other nations those of the Chinese people also are far from trustworthy and since no date prior to 776 B.C. is reliable, we have to depend on these traditions separating, wherever possible, the grain from the chaff. It is unfortunate that though the European nations were so deeply interested in trading with China, they did little to explore and excavate the promising sites in that country. As natural with all legends of mythology, the Chinese too express in terms of millions of years the happenings of their past and give their ancient kings appellations of semi-divine beings.
They style them as "Heavenly emperors", "Terrestrial emperors", "Human emperors", "Nest-builders", and the like.

According to the Chinese their first historical emperor Fu-hi (Fu Hsi) lived and ruled in the years 2852-2738 B.C. He is supposed to have been a supernatural being, half human half fish, who brought order out of social chaos. He created a family life in a state where "children knew only their mothers and not their fathers" by instituting the marital laws. He is supposed to have taught his people to hunt, to fish, to domesticate animals and to construct and play on musical instruments. He also gave the form of hieroglyphics to the vague system of writing which had been hitherto in vogue. Certainly the ascription is too varied and too great to be accomplished by one human being, but it, all the same, is important inasmuch as the Chinese people accepted these as social phenomena achieved and developed by human agency. They even hinted at the matriarchal beginning of society and at the-creation of the institution of marriage from which all relationship springs up.

Likewise the next logical step is suggested by ascribing the introduction of agricultural life to the Emperor Shen-nung, supposed to have lived in the twenty-eighth century B.C. It is in the fitness of things that his name should have borne the implication of the "Divine Labourer." With the third Historical emperor Huang-ti, the "Yellow emperor," Ssi-ma Tsien begins his history. The first two emperors have been referred to in much earlier texts. The original empire had been a narrow strip of land along the Yellow river and around the present city of Si-an-fu. Huang-ti is related to have extended the bounds of this domain to more honourable dimensions. Numerous cultural innovations are ascribed to this emperor whose rule is said to have commenced in 2704 B.C. according to one authority and in 2491 according to another. He was perhaps the first emperor to engage in
war against the Hiung-nu, the ancestors of the Huns, who occupied the northern frontiers of his empire.

Hsia Dynasty (c. 1994-c. 1523 B.C.)

According to traditional accounts, the first Chinese dynasty was Hsia, founded about 1994 B.C. by Yu the Great who was noted for the control of the floods. The emperor is supposed to have cast nine large bronze tripods upon which were engraved the descriptions of the nine regions of his realm among which he is said to have divided his empire. His exploits are recorded in a section of the Shu Ching (Document of History) known as Tribute to Yu.

Shang Dynasty (c. 1523-c. 1027 B.C.)

The Hsia dynasty was succeeded by the Shang which established its capital at Anyang sometime between 1500 and 1200 B.C. The name of the dynasty also they changed from Shang to Yin. The ancient capital Anyang stood in the northern part of the Honan province. Recent archaeological excavations in those parts have brought a few interesting facts to light. They have disclosed that the Chinese of the Shang-Yin period were not merely industrious agriculturists but also builders of walled cities and towns. They had become masters of the arts of melting and casting metals. They had developed the bronze industry and were making bronze ceremonial vessels of exquisite workmanship. Likewise they had developed the ceramic and decorative arts and discovered the use of glaze. Their language with a pretty pictographic script had already become well-developed. Inscriptions on the unearthed artificrafts reveal that during that period the foundation was laid for much of the later development of Chinese culture, and a scanty literature too was produced. A few specimens in the form of odes and declarations are found in the Shih Ching (Book of Songs) and the Shu Ching (Document of History).
The Shang-Yin dynasty too like the Hsia met its end through the reckless vice and cruelty of a tyrant, Chou-sin and his queen Ta-ki. The empress convened voluptuous dances and made men and women dance naked in her gardens. China even in these early days maintained her position as a civilized nation by keeping at bay the predatory tribes of her frontiers. Of these the most persistent were the ancestors of the Hiung-nu, or Huns, settled along the northern and western marches. To fight them, to make pacts and compromises with them, and to befriend them with gifts so as to keep them out of the imperial territories, had been the role of a palatinate on the western frontier, the duchy of Chou, while the court of China with its emperor gave itself up to effeminate luxury. Chou-sin's evil practices had aroused the indignation of the palatine, subsequently known as Won-wang, who in vain remonstrated with the emperor's criminal treatment of his subjects. The strength and integrity of Wong-wang's character had made him the corner-stone of that important epoch; and his name is one of the best known both in history and in literature. The courage with which he spoke his mind in rebuking his unworthy liege lord caused the emperor to imprison him, his great popularity alone saving his life. During his incarceration, extending over three years, he compiled the I-king, or "Canon of Changes", supposed to be the oldest book of Chinese literature, and certainly the one most extensively studied by the nation. Won-wang's son, Wu-wang, avenged his father and the many victims of Chou-sin's cruelty. Under his leadership the people rose against the emperor and, with the assistance of his allies, "men of the west", possibly the ancestors of the Huns, overthrew the Shang dynasty after a decisive battle, whereupon Chou-sin committed suicide by setting fire to his palace and perishing in its flames. He turned to ashes with the luxury that surrounded him which he denied to those who would enjoy them after him.
CHINA

Chou Dynasty (c. 1027—c. 249 B.C.)

The fortunes of the Chou dynasty were intimately connected first with the region west of the present city of Sian, in Shensi province, and next with the environs of the city of Loyang, in Honan. It was started gloriously by the wise statesmanship of King Wen, King Wu, and the Duke of Chou, who originated the state machinery. King Wu established schools for the education of the nation’s youth, and sent his own son and heir to one of these schools to be educated like the son of a common labourer. Thus he laid the foundation of that democratic principle which has been characteristic of the system of education and the subsequent promotion to high offices among the Chinese. It was this freedom which marked the thoughts and feelings of the people who, sometimes unconcerned with the power that was, lived their simple way and crooned their artless prayers and sang their fearless songs of daily action. One such has been preserved to this day.

When the sun rises, I toil;
When the sun sets, I rest;
I dig well for water;
I till fields for food.
What has the power of the ruler to do with me?

As pointed out above, Wu-wang, the first emperor of the new dynasty, named after his duchy of Chou on the western frontier, was greatly assisted in consolidating the empire by his brother, Chou-kung, i.e., “Duke of Chou.” As the loyal prime-minister of Wu-wang and his successor the duke of Chou laid the foundation of the government institutions of the dynasty which became the prototype of most of the characteristic features in Chinese public and social life down to recent times. The brothers and adherents of the new sovereign were rewarded with fiefs which in the sequel grew into as many states. China thus developed into a confederation inasmuch as a number of independent states, each having its own sovereign, were united under one liege
lord, the emperor, styled "Son of Heaven", who as high-priest of the nation reigned in the name of Heaven. The emperor represented the nation in sacrificing and praying to God. The mode of the sacrifice was most sacred. In a recent description* relating to the performance of sacrifice by much later emperors the incidents of the august ceremony are brought out. The reference is recent and yet it preserves the features of the sacrifice so materially that to quote the same here will not be out of place.

"The emperor left his palace in the forbidden city in a jade palanquin borne by sixteen carriers. The imperial cortège was a kaleidoscopic feast of colour. Mounted eunuchs in gorgeous robes carried paraphernalia for the sacrifice. Escorts of the Leopard Tail Guards. Grooms in Imperial liveries of maroon satin. Standard-bearers in velvet-trimmed uniforms with triangular dragon flags. Guant horsemen with bows and arrows leading ponies with yellow saddlecloths. Absolute silence prevailed. In that deathlike hush did the Imperial procession move on unseen. None would be permitted to cast a look on the moving royalty. Shutters would go up on the windows all along the line of march and the side streets would be closed off with blue curtains, while all the people would be ordered indoors. Thus encircled by a triple belt of solitude, under a roof of gorgeously glazed emerald tile, with no sound to break the solemn stillness, save the quiet murmuring of cypress trees—'rooted on earth but pointing towards heaven'—the emperor priest waited in silence the coming of that mystic hour before the dawn, which was to assemble round him the spirits of his ancestors. He stood there alone, thinking, longing, pondering, praying, resolving, with nothing to guide him but his own conscience and the hush of the long cold night! He was expected for the last two days to have endeavoured to withdraw his attention from every external object and turn it steadily within the

---

*The author's Letters From China,
great effort to purge away every evil and weakness of the heart, to be able to hold it up clean and strong before the Spirit of Heaven, that his blessing should not be withheld from the subjects of His son. This sacrifice in the Temple of Heaven was held during every solstice, summer and winter.

The time marked out for the sacrifice was seven quarters of an hour before sunrise while the blackness of night still clung to the chill morning air. Then the Sacred Tablets were borne in procession.

Then solemnly would the priest address the gathering, 'Ye musicians and dancers, Ye choristers and officiating attendants, all perform your duty.' Then would follow the Hymn of Peace, the cardinal point in China's culture, like, indeed, India's own.

After the Hymn of Peace, amid the roll of drums, the wail of wind instruments, the resonance of bills and sonorous tones, the emperor ascended the topmost terrace, where the Spirit of God of the Universe gazed down on him. He finished the ceremony by kneeling eighty-one times. A painstaking adoration!"

Likewise the emperor's relations with his vassals and government officials, and those of the heads of the vassal states with their subjects as well as of the people among themselves were regulated by the most rigid ceremonial. The dress to be worn, the speeches to be made, and the postures to be assumed on all possible occasions, whether at court or in private life, were subject to regulations. The duke of Chou, or whoever may have been the creator of this system, showed deep wisdom in his speculations, if he based that immutability of government which in the sequel became a Chinese characteristic, on the physical and moral immutability of individuals by depriving them of all spontaneous action in public and private life. Originally and nominally the emperor's power as the ruler over his vassals,
who again ruled in his name, was unquestionable; and the first few generations of the dynasty saw no decline of the original strength of central power. A certain loyalty based on the traditional ancestral worship counteracted the desire to revolt. The rightful heir to the throne was responsible to his ancestors as his subjects were to theirs. "We have to do as our ancestors did," the people argued; "and since they obeyed the ancestors of our present sovereign, we have to be loyal to him." Interference to this time-honoured belief would have amounted to a rupture, as it were, in the nation's religious relations, and as long as the people looked upon the emperor as the Son of Heaven, his moral power would outweigh strong armies sent against him in rebellion. The time came soon enough when central power depended merely on this spontaneous loyalty.

Not all the successors of Wu-wang, however, profited by the lessons given them by past history. The empire became weaker as it gained in extent for the centre could not hold the distant provinces. The power of the centre declined as the vassals grew stronger in capacity and undue weakness hastened this decline. Located centrally, surrounded by vassal states, the empire remained stunted while the sub-lords added to their territory and prestige on the frontiers. Many of the vassal states were thus coming up to the emperor. All the same, quite a few of the thirty-five sovereigns of the dynasty proved illustrious and accomplished deeds of valour. Mu-wang of the 10th century B.C. sallied out of the frontiers and engaged successfully against the Dog Barbarians, the ancestors of the Hsiung-nu race. The Books of Odes, a contemporaneous poem, gives a good account of the warfare of one of the emperors of the dynasty—Suan-wang (827-782 B.C.)—against the Tangutans and the Huns. The same book of verse recounts in a poem the evils of the lewd emperor Yu-wang. Among the signs of divine displeasure against the ill-deeds of the
emperor is mentioned an eclipse of the sun which had recently occurred, the date and month being clearly stated. This date corresponds exactly with August 29, 776 B.C. and astronomers have calculated that precisely on that date an eclipse of the sun was visible in North China. This, of course, cannot be a mere accident and since the date falls into the sixth year of Yu-wang's reign, the coincidence is bound to increase confidence in that part of Chinese history. This date naturally has become the sheet-anchor of Chinese chronology.

The Chou dynasty maintained its prestige and integrity for about three centuries. It has left to posterity certain significant legacies. A few may be mentioned: the germ of a well-worked out system of government, which served as a model for succeeding dynasties; some fundamental economic and social institutions and basic rules of propriety, which were later embodied in the Chou Li (The Rites of Chou) and Yi Li (Ceremonial Customs); cultural relics, mostly bronze vessels, which reveal in part the literature, art, life, and customs of its time of prosperity; a body of literature now found in the Shih Ching, Shu Ching, and Yi Ching (Book of Changes). Despite occasional oppression there prevailed during the Chou times a sense of freedom not always preceded in human history. Said the Duke of Shao to Lin Wang (878-842 B.C.), the 10th King of the Chou dynasty:

"It is more dangerous to shut the people's mouths than to block the waters of a river. To block the progress of a river means to force it to expand and thus do more harm than if it has been allowed to take its natural course.

The Son of Heaven knows how to govern when all officials and scholars are free to make verses, the blind bards to sing their ballads, the historians to keep their records, the ministers of music to give their advice, the hundred artisans and all people to speak of anything...."
Indeed the soul of the Chinese people found a readier and fuller utterance in odes and ballads. They sang them with the accompaniments of flute or string instruments. Their singing has been a powerful influence for good and their voice could not be silenced. The advice of the Duke of Shao, quoted above, brings out the spirit and the sense of freedom with which the verses of the times were permeated.

Since the seventh century B.C. the power of the Chous began to decline speedily. The emperor's position was reduced to a mere titular state and the hegemony in the empire fell in turn to one of the five major states for which reason the period came to be called one of the "Five Leaders." The state of Tsi (North Shan-tung) achieved great economic successes through the advice of its prime-minister, the philosopher Kuan-tzi, and began overshadowing the rest. Other states attained leadership by success in warfare. Among these leaders was duke Mu of Tsin (659 B.C.), a state on the west considered barbaric due to the Hunnic influence over its politics and population. These states kept on warring among themselves without referring to the emperor and the chiefs of some even went to the extent of styling themselves as king. The state of Tsin, however, proved most powerful among them; and it was this that destiny favoured in course of time and made supreme over China.

Contending States

The period of this general struggle is called that of "The Contending States" by Chinese historians. The period is indeed full of romance. Examples of heroism, cowardice, diplomatic skill and philosophical equanimity which fill the pages of its history have become the subject of elegant literature in prose and poetry. The political development of the Chou dynasty is the exact counterpart
of that of its cultural life as reflected in the contemporaneous literature. The orthodox conservative spirit which reflects the official views of the emperor and his royal partisans is represented by the name Confucius (551-479 B.C.). The great sage had collected old traditions and formulated the moral principles which had been dormant in the Chinese nation for centuries. His doctrines tended to support the maintenance of the central power; so did those of other members of his school, especially Mencius. Filial love showed itself as obedience to the parents in the family and as loyalty to the emperor and his government in public life. It was the highest virtue, according to the Confucian school. The history of the nation as taught in the Shu-king was in its early part merely an illustration of Confucianist ideas about good and bad government. Confucianism was dominant during the early centuries of the Chou dynasty, whose lucky star began to wane when doctrines opposed to it got the upper hand. The philosophical schools built up on the doctrines of Lao-tzu had in the course of generations become antagonist, and found favour with those who did not endorse that loyalty to the emperor demanded by Mencius; so had other thinkers, some of whom had preached morals which were bound to break up all social relations like the philosopher of egotism, Yang Chu, according to Mencius, disloyalty personified and the very reverse of his ideal, the duke of Chou. The egotism recommended by Yang Chu to the individual had begun to be practised on a large scale by the contending states, their governments and sovereigns, some of whom had long discarded Confucian rites under the influence of Tatar neighbours. It appears that the anti-Confucian spirit which paved the way towards the final extinction of Wu-wang's dynasty received its chief nourishment from the Tatar element in the population of the northern and western boundary states. Among these the Tsin was the most prominent.
Having placed itself in the possession of the territories of nearly all of the remaining states, Tsin made war against the last shadow emperor, Nan-Wang, who had attempted to form an alliance against the powerful usurper, with the result that the western part of the Chou dominion was lost to the aggressor.

Mention may be made here of the outstanding philosophers of the times. They were the following: Lao Tzu, "the Old Fellow," who showed mankind the "Way and Its Power" in his great prose-poem The Lao-Tzu Tao-teh Ching; and taught men to requite injury with goodness. Confucius (551-478 B.C.), Lao Tzu's junior contemporary, who unveiled the light of reason, speaking not as a seer but as a teacher, and who devoted himself to what is fundamental, holding that well-being is its own reward. In his teachings he did not express belief in a future life. Some of his sayings and doings were put down in The Confucian Analects (Lun Yu), The great Learning (Ta Hsueh), and, the Ching Tung, which is variously known as "The Doctrine of the Mean," "The Conduct of Life," and "Central Harmony." Mo Tzu (500-420 B.C.), the great altruist, has been described as an "Apostle of Universal Love, a Spartan with pacific convictions, a Stoic without the Stoic's fatalism, a Utilitarian with a religious mentality, a Socialist believing in an autocracy of virtue." His teachings were recorded in a work bearing his name. Mencius (Meng Tzu, c 372-289 B.C.) was a follower of Confucius and a severe critic of Mo Tzu, a "mentor of princes," and a champion of the principles of democracy, who declared that in a nation the people are the most important and the head of the state is the least important of all. He believed in the essential goodness of man and affirmed that the function of education is to lead people to become aware of their goodness and endeavour to be good for something. Like Lao Tzu, Mo
Tzu, and other humanitarians, he denounced war but preached the right of revolution even in the face of the feudal lords. His work, The Meng Tzu, along with the Confucian Analects, the Great Learning, and the Chung Yung formed the Four Books, which every school boy in old China was required to study. Hsun Tzu (Hsun Ching, c 298-238 B.C.), was the realist and "moulder of ancient Confucianism," who preached that man is essentially bad, though he is the noblest in all creation. He thought, however, that the evil in man could be mended by education. Both a poet and philosopher, he would like to see man harmonize his raw instincts by music and by the performance of ceremonial acts, which would make poetry of daily living. He put his ideas into beautiful literary form as is evident from the book that bears his name.

Other political thinkers were Shang Yang (d. 330 B.C.), the "totalitarian," founder of the Legalist School of political thought, who as "guest minister" of the feudal state of China, encouraged the people to open up virgin lands for cultivation, and made new laws and enforced them with severity. He punished even the crown prince, who happened to have violated one of the new laws. One of his great admirers was Han Fei (d. 233 B.C.), a disciple of Hsun Tzu and a devoted student of the Legalist School of political thought. Han Fei laid stress on the necessity of being true to the truth of things. In politics he emphasized the importance of the "undeviating administration of the law" and the need for statecraft on the part of the sovereign. His writings and those of Shang Yang are among the most important milestones of political thought and literature.

The great thinkers and writers mentioned above lived mostly in the Yellow River valley. In the Yangtse River region there appeared contemporaneously a number of lyric poets, who invented a new form of poetry and introduced a wealth of new material in the folklore and folksongs of
the inhabitants of the districts watered by the great Yangtse and its tributaries. The new form of poetry was called Fu (prose-poem). It differed from the Shih in the Shih Ching in that it was usually a long poem consisting of from 200 to 400 lines of unequal length or irregular metre, that it was highly allusive and allegorical, and in that it was meant to be recited and not sung.

Among the poets of the Yangtse River region, the best known was Chu Yuan (c. 328-285 B.C.). For a time he served as minister of the lord of the feudal state of Chu. The incompetence of his liege lord and the intrigues and corruptions of the courtiers drove him to such utter despair that at last he drowned himself in the MiLo River. His drowning is commemorated annually throughout China on the “Dragon Boat Festival Day.” His short poem, The Soldiers’ Dirge, and his long poem, The Li Sao (An Elegy on Encountering Sorrows), are the extraordinary possessions of the Chinese poetry.

Chuang Chou, the eloquent follower of Lao Tzu, died in 275 B.C. He hated the formalism of the privileged men and undertook to expose their hypocrisy. In scathing terms he spoke boldly, laying bare the weakness of mankind and discounting civilization and its arts. He so flayed the followers of Confucius and Mo Tzu that the scholars of his day were quite unable to refute his criticisms. In colourful anecdotes and simple parables he gently spoke, leading men to self-examination and to quest for spiritual freedom and a new life. His work is entitled The Chuang Tzu. His sense of humour and illuminating wit, the sweep of his imagination, his underlying earnestness and devotion to truth, and his inimitable, charming style of writing are admirable.

The Last Phase

Nan-Wang died in 256 B.C. and a relative whom he
had appointed regent was captured in 249 B.C., when
the king of Tsin put an end to this last remnant of the once
glorious Chou dynasty by annexing its territory. The
king had already secured the possession of the Nine Tripods, huge bronze vases said to have been cast by the
emperor Yu as representing the nine divisions of his em-
pire and since preserved in the treasuries of all the various
emperors as a symbol of Imperial power. With the loss
of these tripods Nan-Wang had forfeited the right to call
himself “Son of Heaven.” Another prerogative was the
offering of sacrifice to Shang-ti, the Supreme Ruler, or God,
with whom only the emperor was supposed to communicate.
The king of Tsin had performed the ceremony as early
as 253 B.C.

By 220 B.C. the lord of Tsin had overthrown all his
warring rivals. He founded the Chinese Empire and styled
himself Shih Huang Ti (“The First Emperor”). His name
was connected with the construction of the Great Wall and
the destruction of numerous literary documents. Because
of his “burning of books” and “burying alive” of a number
of Confucian scholars, his name has been defamed. He
was himself the product of confusion, which he brought to
order, and when he died China was again cast into confusion.

This is but an extremely short survey of the Chinese
history. It does little justice to the land or to its people.
The vast land supported, as it does now, the greatest unit
of human population, and the great deeds of China in the
domain of peace and culture will always be a subject of
extensive study and enduring treatment. All the same, the
little period of our survey furnishes the historian with no
mean achievements, and the same should do for the present.
In fact no country evinces the possibilities of China, of
China that followed the period of the Chous and of one
that is or is yet to be. Its dragon has cast its coils and
the opium-eating giant is on his legs. A new dawn has
broken and life, dove in hand, rides the morn.
CHAPTER VIII

RETROSPECT

In the preceding pages we have given the history of the peoples of Asia, of great empires, and of mighty men of arms. They have passed out of sight but the vision remains, a vision soaked in blood, of fame written on the tide of water, of little men moving mountains. Empires arose, extended, decayed. They were built and destroyed. Man built them, man destroyed them. Man perished as he built, perished as he destroyed. And yet he alone is the residue, standing amidst the ruins like a Colossus, trowel in hand.

He was the elemental unit, the basic factor, in the building of empires, egged on and whipped to action. Empires develop their own nature. Exertion and exhaustion is their inevitable lot. Within they totalize, without they aggress, subjugate, enslave. One may be more or less ruthless than another but their traits are the same: their constituents do not essentially differ. They appropriate heterogeneous elements which break asunder when the central knot that holds them together loosens, and they dismember. A congeries of nations is held by artificial force. Clashing interests interacting on one another are assembled together and held by an unreal cord and the sockets open up and tenons fly apart when the fibres wither
and the cord snaps. Diverse peoples, curious tongues, multiform beliefs and modes of worship, multitudes of men compelled to work for others, all are huddled together in an inorganic whole; all get at loggerheads with one another and together they work the ruin. The Egyptians, the Babylonians, the Persians, and the Assyrians, the most unrelenting of them all, walked the same end, met the same fate.

As early as the fifth century A.D., the Indian chronicler probed into the nature of empires, realized their cruel void and condemned their achievement. "I have given this history," the historian of the Visnu Purana sums up wrathfully the ego and the consequent doom of empires, "the existence of these kings will in future become a matter of debate and doubt as the very existence of Rama and other august kings has become today a matter of doubt and speculation. Emperors become mere legends in the current of time—the Emperors who thought and think 'India is mine.' Fie on Empires! Fie on the Empire of Emperor Raghava!"

Empires went down the inevitable way to ruin, but what the little men built remained. Civilization and culture were what they built and they endure down to this day, even as the pyramids do, as the Great Wall does, and will live beyond decay, beyond time, as the pyramids and the Great Wall will not do. The achievements of bygone epochs are never lost but are assimilated and carried on by subsequent ages down to eternity.

For history is a continuous and universal process. The history of writing, of coinage, of banking, of sailing, of arts, fine and commercial, of knowledge, discoveries and inventions, points but to one coherent and continuous process of its noble burden of accumulated achievements borne down the passage of time. India lived (kingless and peaceful Mohenjo-daro!), and so did China, for they breathed
across the empires, in spite of them, and stored the humane values and cultural gains in order to live by them. The mighty voice of Buddha and Asoka, of Akhenaten and Zoroaster, and of the wise men of China echoes and re-echoes in space, and the intrepid challenge of the Jewish Prophets to the mightiest of the mighty is mellowed by the calling love of one born in the stables of Bethlehem which gave battle to the imperial palace of the Palatine Hill of Rome and stilled the war-cry of the legions.
BIBLIOGRAPHY

The Cambridge History — Vol. 1; The Historians' History of the World, Vol. 1; The Ancient History of the Neat East by H. R. Hall; Buried Empires by Patrick Carleton; Mohenjo-daro and the Indus Civilization, 3 vols. by Sir John Marshall; The Indus Civilization by E. J. H. Mackay; The Indus Civilization by K. N. Dikshit; Excavations at Harappa, 2 vols. by M. S. Vats; Discoveries of Crete by Burrows; Oldest Civilization of Greece by H. R. Hall; History of Palestine and Syria by Olmstead; The Ancient Egyptians by Elliot Smith; Egypt and Western Asia by King and Hall; Royal Tombs by W. F. Petrie; Seven Tablets of Creation by King; History of Sumer and Akkad by King; Early History of Assyria by S. Smith; The Hittites by Garstang; The Old Testament; Passing of the Empires by G. Maspero; Sculptures and Inscription of Darius the Great by King and Thompson; History of Persia by Sykes; A Short History of the Chinese People by L. C. Goodrich; The Ancient History of China by Friedrich Hirth; The Chinese, Their History and Culture by K. S. Latourette; The Story of Civilization: Part I. Our Oriental Heritage by Will Durant.
Index

A

A-anni-padda, 88
Aaron, 171, 172
Abargi, copper shield of, 119
Abdashrta Aziru, intrigues against
Egyptian empire, 122, 123
Abraham, 170-172
Abugir, temples of, 15
Abydos, 59; Khaschhemni's tomb
at, 90; temples of, 18
Achaean Greeks, 38
Achaians, 227-228; culture, features
of, 238-240
Achilles, 229
Achilleus, 236
Adab, 89
Adad-nirari, 135
Adad-nirari II, 138, 142
Adad-nirari III, 143
Adad-nirari IV, 144
Adad-shum-Ugur, 136
Adonijah, 177
Aegaean civilization, features of,
228-238
Aeolis, 236
Agade, 93
Agamemnon, 236, and the Trojan
war, 229
Agum, III, 101
Ahab, 141
Ai, King, 41
Ajax, 229
Akhenaten, 180, 280, Akhenatens,
capital of, 40
Akkad, 92, 97
Akkadians, 95, 96
Alexander, 31, 48, 56, 109, 180,
183, 159
Amanas, 80
Amarru, 126
Amasis, confrontation with Per-
sians, 54, 55
Amen, 28, 48, 75
Amenhotep I, King, 17-18; advice
to son, 18
Amenhotep II, King 17, 28
Amenemhat III, King, 18, 122;
and Mitanni, 28, 29, art, love
of, 60; British musician, lust of,
30; glorious period of, 30-31;
correspondence with Dushratha
(Mitanni), 29.
Amenhotep, IV, 29, 123 and pri-
est of Annon, 37; Atenian doc-
trine of, 31-36, 59, compared to
Muhammad Tughlaq, 31; crusade
against obscurantism, 37-38;
personality of, 39
Ammon, 170
Ammonites, 127
Amon, and Hatshepsut legend, 23
Amorites, 96, 127, vs Egyptians,
122-123, 171
Amos, 182
Amrapali, 68
Amurru, 124
An, and the Deluge, 85, 86
Ana, 104
Anu, shemsu-Hor's conquest of, 6,
7
Anubis, 58
Atanitum, 105
Apep I, Hyksos king, 21
Apis-bull, Egyptian worship of, 9
Apsu, 105
Arabia, 80; trade with Egypt, 4
Aramaean, 177
Arbel, 159
Ark, 83
Artatama, 102, 122, 124
Arnuaunda III, 126
Aryan, 81, links of, 101-102
Ashkanians, 127
Ashur, 97
Ashur-daninpal, 143
Ashur-najir-pal, 136
Ashur-najir-pal II, 139-141
Ashur-rish-Ishi, 137
Ashur-uballit, 124
Ashuras, 158
Ashurbanipal, 84, 105, 101, 111, 164, 165, and Egypt, 51-52; conquest of Elam by, 155, literary of, 157-158
Ashurnagirpal II, 166
Ashurdan, 137
Asoka, 280
Asokan monuments, 165
Assyria, 80; confrontation with Babylonia, 134-138
Assyrian art, 166-168
Assyrian civilization, 160-168, art and architecture, 165-168; art of welfare, 162; conservation of literature; 164-165; economic life of, 163
Assyrian cuneiform, 84
Assyrians, 29, 49, 69, 95, 103; origin and features of, 158-159; vs Hittites, 124, 127
Astarte, 133, 134
Astronomy and mathematics, Sumerian|Babylonian knowledge of, 110-111
Athen (sun-god), 76, Akhenaten's hymn to, 33-36
Atha-aravaveda, 87, 107
Attis, 121
Avesta, 196-197, 260
Azaria, 145

Babylonian, 38, 103; ethnic origin of, 95-96; link with Sumerians, 95-96
Balawat, 167
Banerji, R.D., researches of, 242-245
Baneteren, King, 9
Bardiya (Smerdis), 201
Bartatua, 159
Battle of Zama, 131
Bau, prayer to, 90-91
Bel (Baal), 104
Belulu, Sumerian legend of, 87
Bennadad II, 141, 142
Bhim Bethka, excavations at, 257-258
Bible, The, 138, 181, 187
Bithynians, 127
Boeotians, 228
Bogaz Kyoi (Asia Minor), 120, 121, 258, clay archives of, 43; documents excavated at, 29
Bokrnenef (Ushkara, Bokkhoris), and Shabaka, 50
Book of the Dead (Egypt), 58
Book of Odes, 270
Borsippa, clay table library of, 111
Boustrophedon of writing, 251
Brahui, Baluch dialect of, 81
British empire, a tactic of, 26
British Museum, 86
Bubastis, festival hall at, 48; temples of, 19; Pharaoh's statues in temple of, 20;
Buddha, 32, 280
Byblos, 132, 134
Byron, 158

C
Canaan, 173
Canaanites, 105, 127 as Egyptian empire, 29-30
Canon of changes, 266
Cape of Good Hope, Phoenician discovery of, 132
Cappadocians, 127
Carchemish, 129, 140; battle of, 53; excavations at, 120
Carians, 127
Carthage, Kingdom of, 131, 172
Chaldaeans, 142
Chedorlaomer (Kudui-lagamar), 97
Childe, on date of Indus Valley civilization, 253-256
Chinese and the Huns, 266
Chinese hieroglyphics, 263
Chinese people, ethnic origin of, 262-263; historical legends of, 264-265
Chou Dynasty, fall of, 262
Chou-Kung, features of, government established by, 267-270
Chou Li, 271
Chou-sin and the Ta-ki story of, 266
Christ, 31, 71, 92, 108, 170
Chu Yuan, 176
Chuang Chou, 276
Cicilians, 127
Cimmerians, 127
Civilization, stages of, 5-6
Cleopatra, 56, 64
Confucius, 32, 273, 276
Constantine, 108
Creation, Babylonian legend of, 105
Crete, and destroyers of Minoan culture, 226-228; earlier classical waves of, 225; under Egyptian empire, 25
Cretan culture, end of, 54
Croesus, 130, 131
Cybel and Atis, Phrygian legend of, 130
D
Dadra, 15
Daedalus, 225
Darayavaush I, 202, 206
Darius, conquest of Egypt by, 55-56
Darius I, vs Scythians, 129
Darius III, defeat by Alexander, 56
David, and Saul, 175; reign of, 176; and the Philistines, 175-176
De Morgan, 98
De Sarzec, 103
Deluge, story of, 103, 107, legend of, 82-87
Denderah, 60
Der el-Bahri, temple of, 24; tomb of Neh-Hapet Ra at, 17
Dhritarashtra, personality of, 44
Diodorus, 15; 143; on Egyptian pyramids, 10
Dorian Greeks, 32
Dorians, 227, invasion of Greece by, 240-242
Dorpfeld, and excavations of Troy, 234
Dragon Boat Festival Day (China), 276
Dravidians, 81; and the Indus Valley civilization, 257
Dudhaliya, 126
Dudu, 94
Dur-Papsukal, battle of, 143
Dur-Sharukkin 167
Durant, will 77-78; on epic of Gilamesh, 113-116; on prostitution in Babylonia, 108
Dushratta, 29, 102, 122, 123
Dyava, 157

E
Ea, 165
Eannadu, 89
Edom, 170, 177
Edomites, 127
Egypt, ancient arts and crafts, 4-5; and Persia, 200-202; Assyrian conquest of, 51; Atenizing of, 32; great temples of 59; great stone temples, 15-16, 18, 19; imperial administration and functionaries of, 26-28; inest tradition in, 44; location of, 1; Obelisks in, 19; Persian conquest of, 55; pyramids, 10-16; Sun-disk temple of, 32
Egyptian civilizations, architectural excellence in, 72; arts and science in, 59-63; literature and education, 63-66; religion and philosophy in, 56-59; social life of, 66-70; beginning of agriculture 6; discovery of, 77-78; early stages of, 5-6; evolution of, 71-72; hieroglyphic art of, 74-75; Hyksos, 20-22; law and justice
INDEX

in, 70-71; life of people in, 76-77; woman’s status in, 67-70

Egyptian cuneiform characters, 29
Egyptian Dynasty, first, 8-9; second, 8; third, 9-10; fourth, 13-15; fifth, 15, sixth, 15-16; seventh to tenth, 16; 11th-12th, 17-19; 13th, 19, 21; 15-16th, 21-22; 18th, 22-41; 19th, 41-47; 21st 47; 22nd, 47-49; 23rd, 49, 26th, 52
Egyptian empire, decline of; and Assyrians, 49-53; and Babylonians, 53-54; and Greeks, 56 and Persians, 54-56
Egyptian farmers, woes of, 3-4
Egyptian hieroglyphs, 12, 61, 77
Egyptian History, age of decline and oblivion, 47-56; ancient, 7-56; Middle kingdom, 16-19, 21; old kingdom, 7-16; periodical divisions, 7; the empire, 22-47; see also Egyptian Dynasties
Egyptian pantheon, 57-58, 75-76
Egyptian writing, evolution of, 63-64
Egyptian and origin ethnic mixture vs. Hittites, 5-7
El, 132
Elam, 190-193
Elamites, 81, 97; conquest of Ur by, 95
Elulu, 87
Elulu (Aligi) and Biligi (Balay) legend of, 107
Engidu (Enkidu) legend of, 113-116
Enki, 84, 86, 104
Enki-du, 88
Enlil, 86, 92, 104
Enlil-Kudur-Usur, 136
Enlil-nadin-akl, 137
Enshakushanna, 89
Entemen, 89
Enurta (ur-Ninurta) 95
Enzu, 104
Erman, 30
Esrhaddon (Ashur-akh-iddina), 50, 51, 152, 154, 166
Etana and the Eagle, legend of, 106
Euripides, 230
Evans, Sir Arthur, 228
Ezekiel, 182

F
Female succession, first legitimacy of, 9
Fiu-hi (Fiu Hsi), 264

G
Gandash, 100
Garuda legends, 106
Gibbon, 132
Gideon, 174
Gilead, location of, 170
Gilgamesh, epic of, 84-87, 103, 105, 106, 112-116, 158
Gilu-Khipa, married to Amenhetep III, 29
Gizah, pyramids of, 60
Gordios, 130
Great Wall (China), construction of, 277, 279
Greece, Achaean culture in, 238-240; Aegean civilization in, 228-238; Dorian invasion of, 238-240
Grotenfend, Prof. George, 111, 112
Gudea, rule of, 90-91; statues of, 104
Gun-powder, inventions of, 261
Guti dynasty, 94
Gyges, 130

H
Hamatti, King of, 177
Hammurabi, empire, 171, administration and works of, 95-100; tussle with Rim-Sin, 97-98
Han, generalship of, 131
Han Fei, 275
Harappa, excavations at, 81, 243
Harri, 128
Hajrulab, 131
Hathor, 50, 76, Egyptian goddess, 17, temple of, 60
 Hatshepsut, queen masculine projection of, 23-24
Hawara, famous labyrinth at, 19
Hazael, 142
Hebrew Jews, 131
Hebrews, 170, Egyptians hatred of 171, exodus of, 172
Hecataeus, on Trojan war, 229
Heinrich Schleimann, researches on Troy and Trojan war, 232-235
Helen, 229
Heliopolis, temples of, 18-19, 71
Hemites, and ancient Egyptians, 6
Henu, expedition to land of P., 17
Herakleopolis, 6
Herihor, rule of, 47
Hermitage Museum of Leningrad, 86, 129
Herodotus, 107-109, 230, on Egyptian farmers, 3; on Egyptian programmes, 10, 13, 15
Herakleopolis, 17
Hiram, I, 133, 172, 178
Hissarlik, diggings of, 230
Hippocrates, on Scythian women, 129
Hiran, 131
Hittite, empire, rise and fall of, 122-127.
Hittites, 22, 29, 38, 69 80, 97, 100, 227, deities of, 121; earliest monarchs of, 129; origin of, 120-121
Hittite-Egyptian Treaty (between Khattusil and Rameses II), 43, 46
Hiung-nu, 265
Hiungnu, land of, 262
Homar, 229
Homer, 229
Homerian culture, 237
Homerian poems, historicity of, 236-240
Höremheb, code of, 41; restoration of Amen faith by, 41
Horus, legend of, 6-7, 57, 75
Hosea, 182
Howard, discovery of Tutankhamen's tomb by, 40
Hsia Dynasty, 255
Hsueh Tzu (Hsun Ching), 275
Huang-ti, 264-265
Hummmuratic, code of, 98-99, 117
Huns, and the Chinese, 265, 266, 270
Hwang (Yellow River) 262
Hyksos, rule over Egypt, 20-22, 171
I
Icarus, 225
Ilbab-Shum-iddina, 137
Imhotop, construction to science and architecture, 9-10
I-king, 266
Inanna, and the Deluge, 85, 86
Indo-Aryans, 128, and the Indus Valley civilization, 255-256
Indo-Europeans, 120, 127, 128, 227
Indus Valley civilization, 54, 81; and the Aryans, 255-256; and the Dravidians, 257; animals in, 249; art of, 249-250; buildings and town planning, 243-245; comparison with Mesopotamian cultures, 248-249, 252, 253-254, 256; date of, 252-258; Indian civilization, earliest, 257-258; excavations of, 243; food and dressing, 243-247; games and toys of, 248-249; household articles in, 248; inhabitants of, 255-258; religion and the disposal of the dead in, 251-252; script of, 250-252; social and economic aspects, 245; stones and metals in, 247; weapons in, 247; weights and measures, in, 247-248
"Instructions of Path-hotep," 59
Irkhufeni, 141
Isaiah, 36, 150
Ishbaal, 176
Ishtar, 105, 183, 165; and Gilgamesh, 113-116; Egyptian worship of, 21; wailing of, 94-96
Iset, 75
Israel, location of, 170; revolt against Shalmaneser, V, 49
Issus, battle of, 56
J
Jean-Francois, Champollion, 77
Jehoahaz, 143
Jehova, 32
Jehu, 142
Jemdet-Nasr, 87
Jerubbaal, 174
Jerusalem, capture by David, 176
Jothan, 145
Judah, location of, 170
Jurfari, Rigvedic legend of, 106-107
INDEX

K

Ka, 58, Egyptian concept of, 11, 12
Kadashman-Enlil II, 135
Kadashman-turgu, 135
Kadesh, King, and war with Thothmes III, 25, and Rameses II, 115
Kalakh, 166
Kalidasa, 99, 161
Kambhujija, conquest of Egyptians, 55
Kames, 21
Karkar, battle of, 141
Karna, 92
Karnak, 24-25, 37, 74, beautification by Hatshepsut, 24; temples of, 18-19, 41, 59
Kashšiliashu, 135
Kassites, 29, 58, 100, 101, 102; as Egypt's tributaries, 25; rule over Babylonia, 22
Ket, 58
Kharn-maat, temple of Amenhetep III, 130
Khafra, king, 13, 15
Khasekhemini, Egyptian title of, 9
Khati I, king, 16
Khati II, king, 16
Khatti, Hittite capital of, 121-122
Khattusilis, 135, treaty with Egyptians, 126
Khonsu, 126
Khufu, 13
Khumbangash, 147
Kish, 87, 88, 92
Knossos, destruction of, 228
Koptos, temple of, Min at, 21
Kuan, tzi, 272
Kurigalzu, 134
Kurush (Cyprus), 55, 128
Kuth, 88

L

Labyrinth, Minos's prisoners in, 225
Lagash, King of, 89
Lao-tzu, 273
Laz, 105
Leonardo da Vinci, 92
Leyden Museum, 58, 59
Limmri, 165
Lin, Wang, 271
Louvre museum, figure of Egyptian scribe in, 60; Gudea's statue in, 91, 99-100
Lugal, Sumerian life of, 88, Sumerian title of, 91-92
Lugal-andanukhuunga, 91
Lugal-da-lu, 89
Lugal-Kigub-nidudu, 91
Lugal-Shagengur, 91
Lugal-Zaggisi, 90, 92
Luxor, temple of, 40, 45, 74
Lycaonians, 127
Lycians, 127
Lydians (of Asia Minor), 130

M

Ma, 121, 130
Ma-ah-Ra, Hyksos king, 21
Maat, Egyptian goddess, 30
Madyes, 159
Mahabharata, 44, 92, 259, battle of, 32
Mahavir, birth anniversary of, 89
Mahinda and Sanghmitra, Buddhist mission of, 9
Mannai, 148
Manu, 99
Maonians, 127
Marduk, 96, 98, 104, 130
Marduk-apal-iddina, 136-137
Marduk-balatsu-ikbi, 143
Marduk-pal-iddina, 147, 150
Marduk-Zakir-Shum, 142
Marrishtusu, 93
Marshall, Sir John, on date of Indus valley civilization, 253
Maspero, on river Mill, 2, on woes of Egyptian farmers, 3-4
Mattiauza, 124
Maya, Yudhishthira's place, built by, 166
Medas, rise of, 54
Megiddo, battle of, 25
Melishipak II, 136
Memphis, 8, 11, 16, 20, 22, 27, 49, 51, 59, 71, 74
Men (Iranian Mao), 121
Mena (Menes), Egypt, 1st dynasty founder, 7, 8
Mencius (Meng Tzu), 273, 274
Menepthah, campaign in Palestine, 45
Menkaura, king, 13, 14, 15
Mesha, 133
Meskalamdug, king, 119
Mesopotamia, 38, geographic and physical features of, 79-80
Midas, Phrygian legendary, 130, 149
Midianites, 174
Minoan culture, 225, 227
Minos, Chalcolithic civilization of, legend of, 225
Misphragmoutihosis, 21
Mita, 148
Mithra, 121
Mitannis, 22, 25, 38, 69, 80, 128, vs. Hittites, 122-124, and Egyptian Emperors, 23-29
Mo Tzu, 274, 276
Moali, marches of, 170
Moalites, 127
Mohenjo-daro, excavations at, 81, 243
Moloch, 133-134
Mongolians and Sumerians, 81
Mongols, land of, 262
Morgan, De archaeological finding of, 5
Moses, 92, 170-172
Mrichchakatika, 232, 249
Mu (of Tsin), 272
Mu-wang, 27
Muni-Dan, 127
Mummies, 5, 15, 72, 73
Mursil (Mursililish), 100
Mursil II, vs Seti I, 124-125
Mutallu (Muroatalli), 125-126
Mycenaecans, 227, 229, 234-235
Mytilia, 107
Mysians, 127

N

Nahu-pol-usur (Nahopolassar), 60

Nehuchadrezzar, 40, 137, Egyptian expeditions of, 53-54
Nalunasir (Naonassar), 144
Naharin, 122, 124, 126; Naharin, under empire of Thothmese III, 26
Nahum, 164
Nan-wang, 274, 276
Nana, 95
Napata, capital of Piankhi, 49
Napoleon, 77
Naram-Sin, 93, 104
Ne-maat-Hap, 9
Neb-hapet, Ra, King, 17
Nebpehtira, Athens I, and Egypt liberation from Hyksos, 22
Nebu, 165
Nefertarikara, King, 15
Nefretiti, queen of Akhenaten, 37
Nekara Khian, 21
Nephthys, 58
Nergal, 105, 165
Nesroch, 165
Neuser-Ra, King, 15
Nile, importance for Egypt, 1-3
Nineveh, 105, 111, 151, 159, 164, 166, 167; and brick records of the deluge, 86; fall of, 159-160
Ninigi-dubti, 91
Nippur, ruins of, 87, 92
Niyoga, practice of, 259
Noah, Babylonian name for, 83-84
Nuh-Kheper-Ra, 21
Nubia, 6, Colonned, temples of, 30, trade with Egypt, 4
Nubians, 17, 18, 19, and ancient Egyptians, 5
Nung, 264
Nur-Ninsubur first mention of the deluge by, 83
Nut, 58

O

Oannes, 105
Octavian Caesar and Egypt, 56
Odyseus, 229, 237
Old kingdom (Egypt), 6
Old Testament, 169
Opis, Sumerian dynasty at, 89
Osiris, 57, 75
INDEX

Osorkon I, 48
Osorkon II, 48

P

Palaeolithic/Neolithic culture evolution of, 5-6
Palestine, Egyptian intrigues in, 49-50; Hebrew conquest of, 172-173; Hyksos' depredations in, 22; Menephtah's campaign in, 45; settlement and location of, 170; sun-disk-temples of, 32; Sheeshenck's march into, 48
Pamphylians, 127
Parian Chronicle, 229
Pasiphae, made passion of, 225
Patesi, 162; Sumerian life of, 88
"Peking Man", 263
Pelopennesians, 228
Pelusium, battle of, 55
Peoples and the house of Agamemnon, 227
Pepi I (Merira), king, 15-16
Pepi II, king, 16
Per-pega, battle of, 49
Persia, 80
Pharaoh, 70; destruction of, 228; meaning of, 14
Philippines, and the Jews, 171
Philistines, wanderings of, 228-229
Philistines, 127
Phoenicians and ancient Egyptians, 5; Commercial cities of, 172, trade with Greece, 236
Phrygians (of Asia Minor), 129, 148
Piankhi, 49-50
Pisidians, 127
Pliny, on Trojan war, 229
Posidon, 225
Priyum, 229
Prithvi, 57
Psamati I, 160; Egyptian revivalism under, 52-53
Psamatik II, and Nehuchadrezzar, 54
Psamatik III, fight with Persians, 55
Psusennes II, 48Ptah, temples of, 8, 58
Ptolemy, 56

Pudukhipa, 126
Pulu, 145
Punic wars, 181-182, 172
Punt, ancient land of, 5, 6, 17
Purdah, vogue in Babylonia, 109
Pyramids, 59, 76, 229; age of, 10-16; builders of, 5-6; compared to Ziggurats, 72; Khafra's, 15; Khufus, 12, Khut, 11; Menkaura's, 13, 14; religious purpose of, 11-13, 58, 72; Sakkara, 10; structure of, 12; tyranny involved in building, 13; with wall reliefs, 15

Q

Queen Shubad, 104
Quintus, 108

R

Rakhmare, tomb inscription at, 27
Ramayana, 259
Rameses I, reign of, 41
Rameses II, 42-44, 60, 125-126; personality of, 44-45
Rameses III, 42, 228, 229; and decline of Egyptian empire, 45-46; and priests of Amen, 47
Rameses XI, 47
Ramessesum, 42, 45, 60
Ramman (Adad), 104
Rawlinson, Henry Sumerian cuneiform depicted by, 111
Re (Ra), 53, 57
Rigveda, 87, 107, 132, 161, 242, 256-260
Rigvedic culture, 256
Rim-Sin, 95, 97
Roman empire, a tactic of, 26
Rogetta stone, discovery of, 77
Rusas, 148

S

Sa-Nekhat, king, 10
Saculus, Diadorus, 68
Sahura, King, 15
Sakkara, step-pyramid of, 10
Samha, 83, 84
Sammuramat, 143
Samson, 173
Samsu-ditana, 100
Samuel, 174
Sankara, 31
Sankhara Mentuhetep, king, 17
Sarduris III, 145
Sargon, 159
Sargon I (Sharrukin), 49-50, rise to power, 92-93
Sargon II, 166
Sargon III, 147-149
Sarpamitum, 105
Saru, 70
Satrap Aryandes, 55
Satabatha Brahmana, 83
Salumi, 93
Saul, 174, 175
Scythians, (Sakas in India), 128-129
Sed, Egyptian festival of, 49
Semites, 101, 127, 128, 151-154; and ancient Egyptians, 5, 6, 17; rule over Kigili, 88-89; rule over Sumer, 92-95
Semi-Ti, King, 9
Semitic culture, origin of, 80
Semsu, King, 9
Sen (Sened), King, 9
Seneferu, King, 13, 15
Sennar Cherib, 149, 152, 166
Sensenra Khian, king, 20-21
Sekenenra III, fight against Hyskos, 21
Senusert I, king, 18, 19
Set, 57
Setenkh, 45
Seti, I vs Mursil II, 124-125; and height of Egyptian architecture, 42; march into Palestine, 41
Seti II, 45
Shabaka, 49, 50, 148
Shalmaneser I, 49, 127, 135, 146, 147
Shalmaneser III, 141-143
Shamaritans, 148
Shamash, 99, 104, 165
Shamash—napishtim, 87, 113, 116
Shamash-Shumukin, revolt against Ashurbanipal, 156
Shamshi-Adad, 143
Shang dynasty, 263
Shang-ti, 277
Shang Yang, 275
Shang-Yin dynasty, 265-266
Shao, advice of, 271-272
Sharaguli-Sharri, 93
Sharrukin (Khorsabad), temple of, 149
Shemsu-Hor, Egyptian legend of, 6
Shen, 264
Shepse Skaf, 15
Sheshenk (Shishak), king, 42, 47, 48
Shih Ching, Book of Song, 265, 271
Shih Huang Ti, 277
Shi Shak, 138
Shitullum, 97
Shu, 58
Shu Ching, Document of History, 265
Shubad, tomb of, 119
Shu-king, 273
Shubbiluliuma, 121; diplomacy and conquests of, 122-124
Shulgi, 94
Shultarna and Amenhetep III, 29
Shuruppak, 84
Shutarna, 102, 122, 124
Sibu, and Nabil, 57
Sicily, cretan culture introduced in, 225
Sidon, 132-133
Sin, 165
Sin-Shar-Ishkun, 160
Sinuhe, 65
Sinbad the Sailor, story of, 65
Smenkhara, king, 39, 40
Solomon, 138, 170 and 172; and Sheshenk, 48
Spain, under Phoenicians, 132
Sphinx, Colossal structure of, 14
Springs of Horus, 30
Ssi-ma Tsien, on China’s history, 264
Stesichorus, 230
Suan-wang, 270
Sudraka, 249
Sumer, 80
Sumeria, cities of, 87, pre-deluge dynasties, 87
Sumerians, 63, 80, 95, 96; and Babylonian culture, 102-111;
INDEX

eclipse of, 101; ethnic character of, 81, language of, 81; writing of, 81; origin of, 82, 102-103; war-equipment of, 89
Sumerian civilization and Indus Valley civilization, 81; cities of, 82; urban type of, 82
Sumerian cuneiform writing, deciphering of, 111-112
Sumerian dynasties, and kings, 88-92
Sumites, 80
Sunworship, 84, Semitic cult of, 5
Susa, 82, 93, 95, 98
Syria, Egyptian conquest of, 22; under Lugal-Zaggisi, 91
Syrian Semites, 134

T

Tadukhipa, married to Amenhetep III, 29
Taglath-pilesers, 145-146
Tahutia (Thutii) as Thothemes III's governor, 26
Tallo, 103
Tamazuz, 87
Tanutamon, 52
Tawashi, 127
Tefl-ba, king, 16, 49, 58
Telle el-Amarna, letters, 22, 27, 29, 39
Tell-el-Amarna tombs, 38
Temple of Heaven (China), mode of sacrifice in, 268-269
Teta (Abothis, Atu), king, genius of, 8, 15
The Lao-Tzu Tae-teh Ching, 274
The Rites of Chou, 271
Thebes, 16-17, 20, 26, 30, 41, 49, 52, 59, 71, 72, 74, 126
Theseus, 226
Thespiotian, invasion of Greece by, 235
Thessalians, 228
Thoth, Egyptian legend of, 8, 68
Thothmes III, 125; functionaries of, 28-28; Egyptianization policy of, 28-27; West Asian conquests, 24-26

Thothmes IV, and Mitannis, 28-29
Thutmose I, 60
Thutmose III, 60
Thotunity I, conquests of, 22-23
Thutmose II, king, 23
Thutmose III, king, 23
Tiamat, 105
Tiglath-Pilesers, 166
Tiglath-Pilesers I, 138-166
Tiglath-Pilesers II, 138
Tirhakah, defeat in Assyrians, 51-52
'Tii, queen of Amenhetep III, 31-32
Tjeser (Zoser) king, 9-10, 13
"Treasure of Prium", discovery of, 238
Trojan Horse, 232
Trojan war, 228-229
Troy, conquerors of, 228; Schleimann's excavations of, 233-234
Tsin state (China), 272, 274; eventual supremacy of, 276-277
Tukulti-Ashur, 136
Tukulti-Enurta, 127-136
Tukulti-Enurta II, 138
Turfari, Rigvedic legend of, 106-107
Tutan, 140
Tyre, kingdom of, 131, 132, 133

U

Uahankh, king, 17
Ulam-buriash, 101
Umma, 90
Ummannu Nanu, 151
Ur. tombs, of, 72, 82, 83, 87, 88, 92, 94, 95-108, 104, 118, 120
Ur-Nammu, 94
Ur-Nina, 89
Ur-artu, 144-146, vs Assyrians and Persians, 128
Uruk, 84, 88, 92
Urbugina, 89
Utu, 104
Utu, 88
Uvkhashatra, 159
Ancient World - Ancient World

Civilization - Civilization

[Handwritten text and notes]

THE ANCIENT WORLD

War Chariots, horse drawn, introduction of wagons, 50
White Syriacs and Hittites, 110
Zawitat-If-un, rock-cut excavation, 106
Ziggurat, 106
Ziusudra, 106, compared to Pyrse, 279
Yueh-Chi, 262
Yen (Emperor) 265
Yu (Great) 265
Yu, the Great, 266
Ziusudra, 106
Ziggurat, 106
Ziusudra, 106
Ziggurat, 106